This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

KC 11189

Annie L. B[illegible]
16 Washburn

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

Accidence and Word-Formation.

BY THE

REV. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D.,

HONORARY M.A. OXFORD, VICE-PRESIDENT OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY, LONDON,

Author of "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," Editor of "Old English Homilies," "Cursor Mundi," etc.

NEW EDITION.

London:

MACMILLAN AND CO.

1882.

[*The Right of Translation and Reproduction is Reserved.*]

KC11189

HARVARD
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY
47*78

LONDON:
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL.

PREFACE.

THE present treatise has been drawn up at the urgent request of numerous teachers, who asked for an easier and more elementary work than my "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," published some two years ago. I have endeavoured to the best of my ability to produce a short historical grammar that might be advantageously used as an introduction to my larger book.

I have not, however, made a new book by cutting down and compressing the old one. These "Elementary Lessons" constitute an entirely indepen-

dent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement that at once distinguish it from the "Accidence." A reference to the earlier chapters alone will at once show how very different the two books are. The illustrative examples scattered throughout the present work are for the most part new, very few of them having been quoted elsewhere.

I trust that, to those engaged in the higher education of boys and girls, these lessons will prove helpful in promoting a more thorough knowledge of our "mother tongue," the study of which has of late years been put on a better footing, and has acquired a distinct, and by no means an unimportant, place in the curriculum of a liberal education.

Syntax is not treated of in this volume, but I hope before long to be able to get out both a small and a large book on this important subject.

My best thanks are due to my kind friend, the Rev. W. W. Skeat, for his assistance in revising the proof-sheets. At his suggestion I have adopted the classification of the periods of the Language on p. 33, and the mnemonics on p. 48.

KING'S COLLEGE,
July 1874.

CONTRACTIONS.

Allit. = Alliterative.
Anat. Mel. = Anatomy of Melancholy
C.T. = Canterbury Tales.
Dan. = Danish.
De Reg. = De Regimine Principum.
C. Mundi. = Cursor Mundi;
  C. = Cotton MS.
  F. = Fairfax MS.
  G. = Göttingen MS.
  T. = Trinity MS.
E.E. = Early English.
Fr. = French.
Ger. = German.
Gest. Rom. = Gesta Romanorum.
Gr. = Greek.
Icel. = Icelandic.
Kath. = St. Katherine.
Lat. = Latin.
M.E. = Middle English.
N.Fr. = Norman-French.
O.E. = Old English.
O.E. Misc. = O.E. Miscellany.
O.E. Hom. = Old English Homilies.
O.Fr. = Old French.
O.H. Ger. = Old High German.
P. of C. = Pricke of Conscience.
P. of Pl. = Pastime of Pleasure.
Pol. Rel. = Political, Religious.
T.E. = Tudor English.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia 1
Table of Indo-European Languages 3
Relation of English to the Teutonic Group 4
Table of Teutonic Languages 5

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language 6
Origin of the English 6
Foreign Elements in English 7
The Keltic Element in English 7
The Scandinavian Element in English 8
The Latin Element in English 10
Latin introduced by Norman French 12
Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language 13
Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English 16
Latin introduced by the revival of learning 21
Other Foreign elements 24
Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign elements . 27

CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects 31
Periods of the Language 33

CHAPTER IV.

PAGE
Sounds and Letters 35
Classification of Consonants 37
Number of Elementary Sounds in the English Alphabet . 39
Imperfections of the English Alphabet 40

CHAPTER V.

Permutation of Sounds 42
Grimm's Law 46

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology 53
Parts of Speech 53

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns 61
Gender 61
Number 70
Case 78
Declension of Old English Nouns 83

CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives 87
Declension of O.E. Adjectives 89
Comparison 90
Irregular Comparisons 92
Numerals 96

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns 101
Personal Pronouns 102
Reflexive Pronouns 110
Adjective Pronouns 112

PAGE
Independent or Absolute Possessives 114
Demonstrative Pronouns 114
Interrogative Pronouns 118
Relative Pronouns 120
Indefinite Pronouns 122

CHAPTER X.

The Verb 129
Voice 130
Mood 131
Verbal Nouns 133
Tense 134
Number. 136
Conjugation 136
Strong Verbs 137
Weak Verbs 153
Verbal Inflexions 159
Infinitive Mood 164
Participles 166
Anomalous Verbs 167
Auxiliary Verbs 185

CHAPTER XI.

Adverbs 187
Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives 187
Pronominal Adverbs. 190
Adverbs formed from Prepositions 193
Compound Adverbs. 193

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions 195
Simple Preposition 195

PAGE
Compound Prepositions 196
Comparatives 196
Prepositions compounded with Prepositions . . . 196
Prepositions formed from Nouns 197
Prepositions formed from Adjectives 197
Verbal Prepositions 199

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions 200
Pronominal Conjunctions 200
Verbal Conjunctions. 202

CHAPTER XIV.

Interjections 203

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word Formation 204
Noun Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots 204
Adjective Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots 208
Noun Suffixes from Predicative Roots 209
Adjective Suffixes from Predicative Roots 212
Adverbial Suffixes 213
Verbal Suffixes 214
Composition 215
Noun-Compounds 215
Adjective-Compounds 216
Verbal-Compounds 217
Composition with Particles of English Origin 217
Inseparable Particles 217
Separable Particles. 221
Suffixes of Romanic Origin 223
Composition with Romanic Particles 236
Composition with Greek Particles 243

APPENDIX 247

INDEX 249

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER I.

I.—Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia.

ENGLISH BELONGS TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY OF LANGUAGES.

1. Most of the nations of Europe, and some in Asia, (India, Persia, Afghanistan,) have sprung from one common stock, and are therefore related to one another, by blood and by language.

2. These nations philologists have called the **Indo-European** or **Aryan** family.

The ancestors of the Aryan race once lived together in the highlands north of the Himâlaya mountains.

A time came, of which history gives us no account, when the old Aryan tribes separated from each other, and left their ancient abode to seek new settlements.

Two great tribes, the old Hindus and the Persians, crossed the Himâlaya mountains, and found new homes on the banks of the Ganges and Indus, from whence they soon spread over Hindostan, Persia, &c.

The rest of the Aryan tribes, at different times, and at considerable intervals, travelled westward and came into Europe.

3. The first Aryan comers were the **Kelts,** who settled in parts of Germany, Italy, Spain, Gaul, and the British Isles. Their dialects still survive in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, Ireland, the Isle of Man, and in Armorica or Brittany.

The **Kelts** were driven out of their settlements in Italy, and pushed further westward by the advance of the **Italic** tribes.

About the same time the peninsula of Greece was peopled by the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** tribes.

Next came the **Teutons,** who took up their abode in Germany and Scandinavia. The last Aryan settlement was made by the **Lithuanians** and **Slavonians.**

The Slavonians gradually spread themselves over Russia, Bohemia, Poland, &c.

The Lithuanians settled on the Baltic coast in Prussia, Livonia, and Lithuania.

4. Of the people living in Europe the Fins, Lapps, **Esths,** Basques, Hungarians, and **Turks, do not belong to the Indo-European family.**

5. Table of Indo-European Languages.

I. Hindu
1. Sanscrit (dead).
2. Hindû, Hindustanî, Bengalî, Mahrattî (all descendants from the Sanscrit).
3. Cingalese (language of Ceylon).
4. Gypsy dialect.

II. Iranian
1. Zend (the old language of Persia)
2. Persian.

III. Keltic
1. Bas Breton or Armorican.
2. Welsh.
3. Erse or Irish.
4. Gaelic or Highland Scotch.
5. Manx.

IV. Italic or Romanic
1. Latin (and old Italian Dialects, Oscan and Umbrian).
2. The Romance dialects which have sprung from Latin.
   (*a*) Italian.
   (*b*) French.
   (*c*) Spanish and Portuguese.
   (*d*) Roumansch.
   (*e*) Wallachian.

V. Hellenic or Grecian
1. Ancient Greek, with its various dialects, Attic, Ionic, Doric, &c.
2. Modern Greek.

VI. Teutonic
1. Low-German.—English, Dutch, Flemish.
2. Scandinavian.—Icelandic, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian.
3. High-German.—Modern German.

VII. Lettic
1. Old Prussian (dead).
2. Lettish.

VIII. Slavonic
1. Russian.
2. Polish.
3. Bohemian

II. Relation of English to the Teutonic Group.

English is a Teutonic Language, and belongs to the Low-German Dialects.

6. The Teutonic group is that with which we are more nearly connected, English being one of its most important members.

There are three great divisions of the Teutonic people; (1) **Low-German,** (2) **Scandinavian,** (3) **High-German.**

The **Low-Germans** formerly lived near the low-lying lands, by the mouths of the rivers Rhine, Weser, and Elbe.

The **Scandinavians,** probably an off-shoot from the **Low-Germans,** settled in Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and at a later period in Iceland.

The **High-Germans** lived inland, in the highlands south of Germany (Bavaria, &c.)

7. The word *Dutch*, now only applied to the people of Holland, formerly denoted all German-speaking people. The Germans still call themselves *Deutsche*, and their language *Deutsch*.

8. The word *Dutch* is an adjective signifying national,[1] and was the name by which the old Teutons called themselves in contradistinction to other people, whose language they were unable to understand. They styled themselves the (intelligible)

[1] Cp. O.H. Ger. *diot*, O.E. *theod* people; O.H. Germ. *diutisc*, O.E. *theodisc* of the people, popular.

people, but called others, as the Romans, and the Kelts in Britain, *Walsch* and *Welsh*.

Ancient nations gave themselves polite names, but spoke contemptuously of their neighbours. The old Hindus called themselves *Aryans* from *ârya*, noble: the Slavonians or *Slaves* got their name from *Slavo*, a word *or* renown.

9. **English** belongs to the Low-German division of the Teutonic languages. Its nearest living relations are *Dutch* (the language of Holland), *Flemish* (once the court language of Brabant), *Frisian* (between the Scheldt and Jutland and on the islands near the shore), *Plat-Deutsch* (on the Baltic coast); *Gothic* (the language of the Goths in the ancient province of Dacia) is a *dead* language. The Gothic translation of the Gospels by *Wulfila* or Ulfilas (in the fourth century) is the oldest monument of Teutonic literature extant. The *old Saxon* is also a dead language; it was once spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe in Munster, Essen, and Cleves.

10. TABLE OF TEUTONIC LANGUAGES.

I. Low-German	1. Gothic (dead). 2. Old Saxon (dead). 3. English and Lowland-Scotch. 4. Frisian. 5. Dutch. 6. Flemish.
II. Scandinavian	1. Icelandic. 2. Swedish. 3. Danish. 4. Norwegian.
III. High-German	Modern High-German, with its older stages; Middle High-German, and Old High-German.

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language.

Origin of the English.

11. The English language was brought into Britain about the middle of the fifth century by Low-German tribes, commonly known as Angles, Saxons, and Jutes (Frisians).

These Teutonic invaders were known to the Britons as *Saxons*, but they called themselves *English* (Ænglisc), and their new home *England* (Ængla-land, the land of the *Angles*).

The term Angle or Engle is supposed by some to take its name from the district of Angeln in the Duchy of Schleswig.

12. The *Frisians* or Jutes settled in Kent; the *Angles* in the north, east, and central parts of Britain; and the *Saxons* in the south and west parts of the island (in Essex, Sussex, Wessex, &c.)

The Lowlands of Scotland once formed part of the old Northumbrian kingdom, hence *Lowland-Scotch* is an *English dialect.*

Foreign Elements in English.

ENGLISH WAS ORIGINALLY AN INFLECTED AND UNMIXED LANGUAGE, BUT IS NOW AN UNINFLECTED AND COMPOSITE LANGUAGE.

13. The language that was brought into Britain by the Low-German invaders, was an inflected and synthetic language, like its congener Modern German, and its more distant relatives, Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.

Though modern English has lost most of the older grammatical endings, and has been reduced to an *analytical* language (like Danish, French, and Persian), it still belongs, by virtue of its descent, to the family of inflected languages.

14. The English language brought over by the Angles, Saxons, &c., was an *unmixed* language.

There were no non-Teutonic elements in its vocabulary.

It is now a composite or mixed language, having adopted words from various nations with whom the English people have had dealings at different times.

The foreign elements in English may therefore be treated historically.

I.—The Keltic Element in English.

15. The English invaders of Britain displaced the old Keltic inhabitants, and did not largely mix with them; their language was, therefore, but little influenced by the speech of the British tribes. It affected the spoken far more than the written language, for from

the ninth to the twelfth century English literature furnishes but few examples of borrowed Keltic terms. The words of this period are *barrow* (mound), *brock, breeches, clout, crock, kiln, cradle, mattock, pool.*

In the literature of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we find more frequent traces of Keltic terms, of which the following still survive :—*boast, boisterous, bribe, cam* (crooked), *crag, dainty, darn, daub, fleam, glen, havoc, kiln, mop, pillow.*

16. The Norman-French contained some few Keltic terms borrowed from the old Gaulish ; some of these found their way into English, as : *bag, barren, bargain, barter, barrel, basin, basket, bonnet, bucket, bran, button, chemise, car, cart, dagger, gravel, gown, harness, marl, mitten, motley, osier, pot, rogue, ribbon, varlet, vassal, wicket.*

17. A few words, the names of Keltic things, are of recent introduction : as, *bannock, bard, bog, brogue, clan, claymore, clog, log, fillibeg, gag, kilt, pibrock, plaid, pony, shamrock, slab, slogan, whiskey.*

18. The oldest geographical names are of course Keltic, especially names of rivers and of mountains ; as, *Avon, Ouse, Esk, Exe, Usk, Thames, Derwent, Dee, &c., Pen-y-Gent, Helvellyn, &c., Aberdeen, Kent, Dover, &c.*

II.—The Scandinavian Element in English.

19. Towards the end of the eighth century (A.D. 787) the Northmen of Scandinavia (Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Iceland) commonly known as **Danes**, made descents upon the East coasts of England, Scotland, the Hebrides, and Ireland, as well as in other parts of Europe.

In the ninth century they obtained a permanent footing in the North and East parts of England: and in the eleventh century a Danish dynasty was established on the throne for nearly thirty years (A.D. 1016—1042).

The Scandinavians were a Teutonic people and their language very closely resembled the old English speech. It is, therefore, no easy matter to determine the exact number of words introduced by the old Northmen. Many of the borrowed words have taken an English form, so as to be no longer distinguished as pure Scandinavian. The spoken language was affected by the Danes far more than the written language, especially in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, Lincoln, and Norfolk, where many Danish words are still to be found. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries only a few Scandinavian words found their way into the written language; such words are, *aren*, are; *by*, a town; *fel*, a hill; *til*, to.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries they became more common and are easily discernible; many of these still survive, as *blunt*, *bole* (of a tree), *bound* (for a journey), *busk*, *buckle-to* (buskle), *cake*, *call*, *cast*, *curl*, *cat*, *dairy*, *die*, *daze*, *droop*, *fellow*, *flit*, *fro*, *froward*, *gab*, *gait*, *ill*, *irk-* (some), *kid*, *kindle*, *loft*, *low* (flame), *neave* (fist), *muck*, *odd*, *puck*, *plough*, *root*, *same*, *scold*, *sly*, *shy*, *tarn* (lake), *ugly* (E.E. *ugge*, to fear), *weak*; *gar* (to cause, make), *greet* (to weep), are used by Spenser.

20. Very many Norse words once very common in old Northern writers have gone out of use, or have become provincial, as, *at*, to (before infinitives) *beck* (stream), *erre* (scar), *last* (fault), *lit*, (stain), *layte* (to seck), *mun* (must, shall), *trine* (to go), *tyne* (to lose), *tynsel* (loss), *throp* or *thorp* (town), &c.

21. Many names of places ending in *by* (town), *fell* (hill), *beck* (stream), *shaw* (wood), *garth* (enclosure), indicate Danish settlements; *firth* is the Scandinavian *fiord* (cp. Mil-ford, Water-ford).

22. The Danish invasions did much to unsettle the inflexions in the North of England. Before the Norman-French conquest we find the *n* of the infinitive falling off, and the verb in the third person singular present indicative ending in *es* instead of *eth*. The use of the plural suffix in *as* was frequently extended to nouns that originally formed the plural by the suffix *a* or *u*. The dialects of the North and North-East of England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are almost as flexionless as modern English. These parts of England were the last to come under the influence of Norman-French.

III.—The Latin Element in English.

1. Latin of the First Period: connected with the Roman Invasion.

23. The Roman occupation of Britain for nearly four centuries (from A.D. 43 to A.D. 426) left its traces in the few names of places, as: *Chester*, *Gloucester*, *Dorchester*, *Exeter*, *Stratton*, *Lincoln*, &c.

Fortified towns and great roads became familiar objects to the old English settlers in Britain; so *castra*, a camp, and *strata*, a street, soon passed into English under the forms *ceastre* = chester, and *strǽt* = street. Probably *portus*, a port, as in *Ports*-mouth, was known to the oldest English. Cp. O.E. *port-gerefa*, a *port-reeve*.

2. Latin of the Second Period: St. Augustine's Mission.

24. The introduction of Christianity about the end of the sixth century (A.D. 596) brought England into connection with Rome, and during the four following centuries a large number of Latin words became familiar to educated Englishmen.

The words introduced into the language during this period were, for the most part, connected with the Church, its services and observances, as: *ancor*, hermit (anchoreta); *postol*, apostle (apostolus); *biscop*, bishop (episcopus); *calc*, chalice (calix); *clustor*, cloister (claustrum); *diacon*, deacon (diaconus); *clerc*, clerk (clericus); *munec*, monk (monachus); *mæsse*, mass (missa); *mynster*, **minster** (monasterium); *preost*, priest (presbyter); *sanct*, saint (sanctus); *carited*, charity (caritas); *ælmesse*, alms (eleēmosyna); *predician*, preach (prædicare); *regol*, rule (regula).

A few foreign articles now came in for the first time, and retained their Latin names.

(1) A few articles of *food*, *clothing*, *ornaments*, &c.: *butor*, butter (butyrum); *cêse*, cheese (caseus); *pæl*, pall (pallium); *tunic*, tunic (tunica).

(2) *Trees and Plants*: *cedar*, cedar (cedrus); *fîc*, fig (ficus); *peru*, pear (pirum); *persuc*, peach (persicum); *lactuce*, lettice (lactuca); *lilie*, lily (lilium); *pipor*, pepper (piper); *pisa*, pease (pisum), &c.

(3) *Animals*: *mere-greot*, pearl (margarita); *camel*, camel (camelus); *culufre*, dove (columba); *leo*, lion (leo); *pard*, leopard (pardus); *ostre*, oyster (ostrea); *pâwa*, peacock (pavo); *trûht*, trout (tructa); *turtle*, turtle (turtur); *olfend* (camel), a corruption of *elephant*.

(4) *Weights*: *pund*, pound (pondus); *ynce*, inch, ounce (uncia), &c.

(5) *Miscellaneous*: *candel*, candle (candela); *disc*, disk (discus); *culter*, coulter (culter); *marman* -(stan), marble stone (marmor); *tæfl*, table (tabula); *mynet*, mint (moneta).

3. Latin of the Third Period: introduced by the Norman Conquest.

25. The Norman Conquest in 1066 was a remarkable event in the history of the English nation, and affected the language more than anything that happened either before or after it.

When the Normans made themselves masters of England they attempted to spread their language throughout the island. French became the language of the court and of the nobility: of the clergy and of literature: of the universities and schools: of the courts of law, and of Parliament: but French did not succeed in displacing English, for the great body of the common people refused to give up their mother-tongue, and from time to time there arose men who wrote in English for the benefit of those who knew nothing of French or Latin. After a while the Normans, being in the minority, mingled with the English and became one people. While the coalescence was taking place (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), there was a mingling of the two languages, and many French words found their way first into the spoken and afterwards into the written language.

After the distinction between Normans and English died out, Norman-French degenerated into a mere

provincial dialect and at last ceased to be spoken in England.

In 1349 boys no longer learnt their Latin through the medium of French.

In 1362 (the 36th of Edward III.) English superseded French and Latin in the courts of law.

Certain political circumstances helped to bring about these changes, such as the loss of Normandy in John's reign, and the French wars of Edward III. (A.D. 1339).

Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language.

26. The Norman-French was essentially a Latin language, and the Norman Conquest added to English another very considerable Latin element.

The introduction of French words was the work of some time, and went on gradually from the eleventh to the fourteenth century.

They came into the written language at first sparingly. In the Saxon Chronicle from 1086 to 1154, we find less than twenty Norman-French words:—*court*, *dub* (1086), *peace* (1135), *treasure*, *prison*, *justice*, *rent*, *privilege*, *miracle* (1137), *standard*, *empress*, *countess*, *tower* (1140), *procession* (1154). A little before A.D. 1200 we find, *baron*, *chemise*, *custom*, *penance*, *palfrey*, *sot*, *jugler*, *master*, *mercy*, *manner*, *poor*, *riches*, *robbery*, *sacrament*, *charity*, *easy*, *font*, *sermon*, *passion*, *wait*, *saint*, *poverty*, *large*, *mantle*, *pride*, *service*, *spouse*, *taper*, *turn*, &c.

Even at this early period we find hybrids: *spus-had* = marriage; *crisme-cloth*; *maisterling* = prince;

bispused, bespoused = married; *elmesful* = charitable, &c.

In Layamon's Brut (A.D. 1205), we find in the two versions less than one hundred words of French origin, among which we note especially, *admiral, abbey, annoy, attire, astronomy, camp, change, chattel, chieftain, close, country, cope, crown, cross, cry, delay duke, escape, espy, false, fail, fool, grace, guile, guise, hardily, honour, hostage, hurt, ire, cable, legion, messenger, machine, male, mile, mountain, nun, nunnery, pilgrim, post, power,* to *roll, school, scorn, senator, serve, serving, sire, suffer, use,*[1] &c.

27. Numerous French words were introduced into the language during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, by those native writers who for the first time translated religious treatises, poems, and romances, from the French into English. These compensated for the original imperfections of our language in religious, ethical, philosophical, and poetical terms · besides giving us numerous words referring to war, chivalry, and the chase. Towards the middle of the fourteenth century, French influence upon the language was at its height.

28. Chaucer has been wrongfully accused of corrupting the written language of his day, by fresh importation of Romance words. In his translations he doubtless was compelled to employ many new terms for ideas and things, as yet unfamiliar to his countrymen; but his vocabulary is not more deeply tinged

[1] See the long list of French words in the "Ancren Riwle," "King Alexander" ("Hist. Outlines," pp. 339–344).

with French words than other writers of the fourteenth century. He no doubt gave his authority to words already in general use, and rejected others in favour of native terms, and thus did much to fix the native vocabulary, and to stop the increasing inflow of borrowed words. It is said that not more than perhaps one hundred Romance words used by Chaucer in his various works have become obsolete.

"It is a great but very widely spread error to suppose that the influx of French words in the fourteenth century was due alone to poetry and other branches of pure literature. The Law, which now first became organized into a science, introduced many borrowed terms from the nomenclature of Latin and French jurisprudence; the glass-worker, the enameller, the architect, the brass-founder, the Flemish clothier, and the other handicraftsmen, whom Norman tastes and luxury invited, or domestic oppression expelled from the Continent, brought with them the vocabularies of their respective arts; and Mediterranean commerce—which was stimulated by the demand for English wool, then the finest in Europe—imported from the harbours of a sea where the French was the predominant language, both new articles of merchandize and the French designation for them. The sciences too, medicine, physics, geography, alchemy, astrology, all of which became known to England chiefly through French channels, added numerous specific terms to the existing vocabulary; and very many of the words first employed in English writings as a part of the technical phraseology of these various arts and knowledges, soon passed out into the domain of common life, in modified or untechnical senses, and thus became

incorporated into the general tongue of society and of books."[1]

29. But when the English vocabulary was thus increased by this great influx of French terms, many of the native words went out of use. Thus, if we take a thirteenth-century version of the Creed, we find *ikenned*; conceived; *ipined was*, suffered; *lihte*, descended; *steih*, ascended; *imennesse of haluwen*, communion of saints; *ariste*, resurrection. In a fourteenth-century copy (A.D. 1340) of the Lord's Prayer we find *yeldinges*, trespasses; *yelderes*, trespassers; *vondinge*, temptation; *vri*, deliver. Wickliffe has *dettis*, *dettour*, *delyvere*.[2]

Tyndal (1526) has *treaspasses*, *treaspas* (verb) for *dettis* and *dettours*.

Many good old English words have gone out since Chaucer's time, having been replaced by Romance and Latin terms.

Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English.

30. No language gives up its grammar and adopts a new system of borrowed inflexions for its nouns, adjectives, and verbs, &c.

It will part with the greater portion of its original vocabulary, and yet leave grammatical forms almost untouched. Norman-French words found an easy

[1] Marsh, "History and Origin of English Language," p. 66.

[2] Some older versions of the Pater Noster have *gultes* and *gulteres*, trespasses and trespassers; *childe* (shield) for *fri* (free).

entrance into our language, but the influence of four centuries only served to modify and to diminish English inflexions, not to eradicate them by the substitution of new forms.

The Danish invasion had unsettled the language in many parts of the country, and in the literature of the eleventh century we see a disposition to adopt a less inflexional structure, than in the earlier periods. Nearly every nation of the Teutonic family has, by the loss of inflexions, become almost as uninflexional as our own.[1] The tendency of all highly inflected or synthetical languages is to become analytical or non-inflexional, so that, had there been no Norman Conquest, we should have followed the ordinary growth of language, in replacing the older grammatical endings by the use of relational words, as, *prepositions*, *auxiliaries*, &c.

Doubtless the Norman invasion caused this change to take place more rapidly and generally, than it would otherwise have done, but even the slight direct modifications here spoken of are not found much before the fourteenth century.

31. The power of forming new words by derivation from Teutonic roots was to a certain extent checked by the introduction of so large a number of foreign words.

Instead of making a new word by the old and formerly familiar method of attaching a suffix to a living native root, it became far easier to adopt a term ready made.

[1] *German* and *Icelandic* have lost much less than other Teutonic languages.

Cp. O.E. *thanc* (thought); *thanc-ol* (thoughtful); *thancful*, *thancwurth* (grateful); *thancolmod* (prudent); *thancwurthlice* (gratefully), &c.

32. Some Norman-French suffixes replaced English ones.

In the fourteenth century we find the feminine **-ess** taking the place of **-en**, and **-ster**. Cp. *dwelleresse* in Wicliffe for *dwellstere; goddesse* (Chaucer) for Old English *gydin;* and the modern forms *bond-age*, *till-age*, *hindr-ance*, *knave-ry*, *wondr-ous*,[1] &c.

33. Some substitutes for inflexion came into use. The preposition **of** replaced the genitive **-s**; the comparison of Adjectives was expressed sometimes by **more** and **most** instead of **-er** and **-est**. Many Romance adjectives were inflected in the plural after the Norman-French method, as *wateres principales*, *capitalles lettres;* we also find *children innocens* (La Tour Laundry, p. 104).

The Old English method of forming a plural adjective was by adding **-an** (**-en**), **-e**.

When used substantively, the Romance adjective formed its plural by the addition of **-s**, and the Old English by **-e**. Cp. "He ous tekth to knawe the *great-e* thinges vram the *littl-e*, the *preciouse-s* vram the *vile-s*."[2] To this method we owe the early forms *gentles*, *familiars*, which became the models for many others, as "our *delicates* and *wantons*" (Holland's "Pliny," p. 603); the *yellowes* = the jaundice

[1] See "Historical Outlines," p. 39.

[2] He teaches us to know the great things from the little ones, the precious things from the vile ones.

(Hollinshed), "*yonges*" = young ones (L. Andrewe); *calms, shallows, worthies*, &c.

The use of Auxiliary Verbs (*have, shall, will*) became very common after the Norman Conquest.

34. The earliest and the greatest change was upon the pronunciation.

All the older vowel endings *-a, -o, -u*, became *-e*, and the terminations *-an, -as, -ath, -on, -od*, became *-en, -es, -eth, -en, -ed*.

After a time (fourteenth century) the final *e* fell off altogether, or was retained as an orthographical expedient. Cp. O.E. *nama*, name; *steorra*, M.E. *sterre*, star; O.E. *suna*, M.E. *sone* = son, &c.

35. This change of final vowels, simple as it was, served to weaken most of the inflexional forms.

It also helped to break down the old distinction of grammatical gender.

Thus the suffix **-a** was a sign of the masculine, and **-e** of the feminine gender; but when *webb-a* (m), *webb-e* (f), a weaver, came to be represented by the same form, *webbe*, then the final **-e**, if retained as a sign of gender, must be limited either to the masculine or feminine. An attempt was made to restrict it to the masculine, as *hunt-e*, a hunter, *spus-e*, a bridegroom; but *webbe*, a female weaver, occurs in "Piers Plowman." We now use *webster*.

We also find it frequently used up to the middle of the fourteenth century, to denote the *agent*. (Cp. the restricted sense of the old fem. **-ster**; *see* p. 63). We can easily understand how *widuwa* (a widow-er) dropped out of use, leaving *widuwe* (a widow), from

which a new masculine had to be formed; just as in the sixteenth century we find *spouse* (m), and *spousesse* (f) for the twelfth century *spus* (m), and *spuse* (f).

36. After a time a few fresh vowel sounds found their way into the language, as **u**, in duly; **oi** in boil; the **a** in fame; **ei** in aisle.

37. Guttural sounds were softened down or became mute.

(1) Initial and final **c** (**k**) became **ch**, **tch**, as O.E. *cild* = child; *godlic* = *godlich* (godly); *streccan* = *strecche* (stretch); **sc** became **sh**; *sceal* = shall; *fisc* = fish; **g** became **i** (**y**), **w**; *geleâfa* = *ileafe* (be-lief); *hand-ge-weorc* = handy-work; *fugol* = fowl; *dæg* = day; *lagu* = law.

In some instances **cg** has become **j** (**ge**, **dge**) *cringan* = to cringe; *brycg* (M.E. *brigge*) = bridge.

(2) **c**, **ch**, **h**, **g**, have disappeared or become mute; *ic* = *ich* = *ih* = I; *cniht* (M.E. kni*ch*t) = knight; *heah* = high; *dirtig* = dirty; &c. Cp. the falling away of **h** in *hlâf* = loaf; *hring* = ring; *hnecca* = neck; **k**, and **g**, before **n**, have become mute: *cneow* = knee; *gnagan* = to gnaw. Cp. the weakening of **l** before **f** and **k** in *calf*, *walk*, &c.

J (jet), **z**, **sh** (sure), **zh** (azure), were sounds that came into use after the Norman Conquest.

38. A new accentuation was introduced by the Normans. The old English accent like that of other Teutonic nations was upon the root syllable as *un-faith'-ful-ly*, *un-be-liev'-ing*; but in French there was a slight stress of the voice upon the final syllable.

When French words were first adopted they retained their original accent, thus *raison* and *voyage* became *reasón* and *voyáge* before they were accented as *reáson* and *voýage*.

In the written poetical language of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find words of pure English origin ending in *-ing*, *-liche*, *-ness*, receiving an accent on the final syllable. Chaucer rhymes *gladnésse* with *distrésse*. But an attempt was made even as early as Chaucer's time to make borrowed words conform to the native accentuation, and in the "Canterbury Tales" we find *mórtal*, *témpest*, &c. as well as *mortál*, *tempést*, &c.

4. Latin of the Fourth Period: introduced by the Revival of Learning.

39. The large number of French words brought into the language by the Norman invasion, prepared the way for the introduction of fresh Latin words, through the impetus given to learning and literature by the revival of learning in England at the beginning of the sixteenth century.

There are then *two* distinct classes of Latin words in English. (1) Those that have come indirectly from Latin through French. (2) Those that have come directly from the Latin.

Words of the first class have undergone much change in spelling, and their origin is often obscured; those of the second class have suffered but little alteration, and their origin is easily recognised.

Latin.	Words coming from Latin through Norman-French.	Words coming directly from the Latin.
captivum	caitiff	captive
dilatare	delay	dilate
factum	feat	fact
fragilem	frail	fragile
hospitale	hotel	hospital
lectionem	lesson	lection
pungentem	poignant	pungent
regalem	royal	regal
securum	sure	secure
separare	sever	separate

40. Under the influence of learning, many words coming indirectly from the Latin have taken a more classical form, as, *assaute*, *dette*, *defaut*, *aventure*, *vitaille*, have been altered to *assault*, *debt*, *default*, *adventure*, *victual*, &c.

41. The influx of Latin and Greek words, by means of learning and education, lasted from the time of Henry VII. to the end of the reign of Charles II. Many Latin words when first introduced into our language altered their termination, as, *splendidious*, *mulierosity*, but others were adopted in their original form, as, *chylus* = chyle; *classis* = class; *precipitium* = precipice; *mummia* = mummy; so too with Greek words, *parallelon* = parallel; *ecstasis* = ecstasy; *epocha* = epoch.

As the origin of these loans was well known, we can understand why *compact*, *convict*, &c. came into use before *compacted* and *convicted* as passive participles.

42. A great number of classical words found their way into the written language which never passed into general usage, as, *intenervate*, to soften; *deturpated*, deformed (Jeremy Taylor); *ludibundness*, *sanguinolency* (Henry More), &c.

During the reigns of Elizabeth, James, and Charles I. fine writing and speaking were greatly affected; but fortunately many true lovers of their noble mother-tongue raised a cry against the pedantic use of scholastic or *ink-horn* terms as they were then called, and thereby did something to stop the tendency to inundate the language with long and useless words.

Thomas Wilson writing in 1553 says, "Among other lessons this should first be learned, that we never affect any strange ink-horn terms, but to speak as is commonly received; neither seeking to be over fine, nor yet living over careless; using our speech as most men do, and ordering our wits as the fewest have done. Some seek so far for outlandish English, that they forget altogether their mother's language, and I dare swear this, if some of their mothers were alive they were not able to tell what they say, and yet these fine English clerks will say they speak in their mother tongue, if a man should charge them with counterfeiting the king's English." Gill in his *Logonomia Anglica*, published in 1619, thus notices what he calls the "new mange in our speaking and writing." "O harsh lips, I now hear all around me such words as *common*, *vices*, *envy*, *malice;* even *virtue*, *study*, *justice*, *pity*, *mercy*, *compassion*, *profit*, *commodity*, *colour*, *grace*, *favour*, *acceptance*. But whither, I pray, in all the world have you banished those words which our forefathers used for these new-fangled ones? Are our

words to be exiled like our citizens? Is the new barbaric invasion to extirpate the English tongue? O ye Englishmen, on you, I say, I call, in whose veins that blood flows, retain, retain, what yet remains of our native speech, and, whatever vestiges of our forefathers are yet to be seen, on these plant your footsteps." Butler ("Hudibras," I. i. 91) speaks of:—

> "A Babylonish dialect,
> Which learned pedants much affect:
> 'Twas English cut on Greek or Latin,
> Like fustian heretofore on satin."

43. There are a few miscellaneous Romance words that have come into the language chiefly during the Tudor and Stuart periods.

(1) **Spanish terms.**—"During the latter half of the sixteenth century, and the first half of the seventeenth century," the Spanish language "was very widely known in England, indeed far more familiar than it ever since has been.

"The wars in the Low Countries, the probabilities at one period of a match with Spain, the fact that Spanish was almost as serviceable at Brussels, at Milan, at Naples, and for a time at Vienna, not to speak of Lima and Mexico, as at Madrid itself, and scarcely less indispensable; the many points of contact, friendly and hostile, of England with Spain for well nigh a century—all this had conduced to an extended knowledge of Spanish in England. It was popular at Court; Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth were both excellent Spanish scholars. . . . . The statesman and scholars of the time were rarely ignorant of the language."—TRENCH.

Many Spanish words end in **-ado, -ade, -dor, -illo, -oon**: as *armada, barricade, bravado, desperado, eldorado, grenade, parade, tornado, corridor, matador, battledor, armadillo, flotilla, peccadillo, punctilio* (originally *puntillo*), *vanilla, maroon, picaroon, paragon.* Other familiar terms are *alligator* (el-lagarto),[1] *buffalo, cannibal, cargo, cigar, cochineal, crusade, don, duenna, filibuster, gala, garotte, indigo, mulatto, negro, parasol*, &c.

(2) **Portuguese.**—*Caste, fetishism, palaver, porcelain, moidore*, &c.

(3) **Italian.**—In the time of Chaucer, Italian exercised an important influence upon our literature, but scarcely any upon the language. During the reigns of Henry VIII., Mary, and Elizabeth, Italian was as necessary and familiar to every courtier as French is now-a-days. Numerous Italian works were translated into English and Italian peculiarities of speech were copied by English speakers and writers who wished to be thought in fashion. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton, show an intimate acquaintance with Italian literature. To Italian we are indebted for the following words: *ambuscade, balustrade, bagatelle, balcony, bandit, bravo, broccoli, buffoon, burlesque, bust, cadence, canto, caricature, cartoon, charlatan, citadel, concert, ditto, folio, gazette, grotto, harlequin, lava, madrigal, masquerade, motto, moustache, opera, parapet, pedant, proviso, regatta, rocket, ruffian, serenade, sketch, sovereign, stanza, stiletto, umbrella, volcano*, &c.

(4) **Modern French.**—Some few were introduced during the reign of Charles II., as *chagrin*, good

[1] Lat. lacerta = lizard.

graces, grimace, repartee. Many others have come into the language at a still later period: *accoucheur, début, depôt, déjeuner, élite, goût, programme, soirée, précis,* &c.

44. A few words are borrowed from other **Teutonic** tongues:—

(1) **Dutch.**—Mostly nautical terms, as *boom, hoy, sloop, schooner, skipper, yacht,* &c.

(2) **German.**—(i) Names of metals, *cobalt, nickel, zinc,* &c.; (ii) *loafer, iceberg, plunder;* (iii) some few terms are formed after a German model, *father-land, folk-lore, fuller's earth, hand-book, one-sided, pipe-clay, stand-point,* &c.

45. We have naturalized miscellaneous words from various sources.—

(1) **Hindu.**—*Calico, chintz, muslin, loot, jungle, pundit, rice, durbar,* &c.

(2) **Persian.**—*Chess, lilac, orange, sash, turban,* &c.

(3) **Hebrew.**—*Abbot, amen, cabal, cherub, jubilee, pharisaical, sabbath, shibboleth.*

(4) **Arabic.**—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, almanac, arsenal, assassin, bazaar, chemistry, cipher, gazelle, giraffe, shrub, syrup, sofa, talisman, tariff, zenith, zero,* &c.

(5) **Turkish.**—*Bey, chouse, scimitar,* &c.

(6) **Malay.**—(Run) *amuck, bamboo, bantam, orang-utang, sago,* &c.

(7) **Chinese.**—*Caddy, nankeen, satin, tea, mandarin,* &c.

(8) **American.**—*Canoe, cocoa, hammock, maize, tobacco, tomahawk, wigwam, yam.*

Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign Element.

46. The total number of words in a complete English dictionary would be about 100,000. Numerically the words of Classical origin are about twice as many as pure English terms. The best writers, however, use less than a tenth of the total number; while in ordinary conversation, our vocabulary contains from three to five thousand words.

Recollecting that all our most familiar terms are unborrowed, and that in an ordinary page of English, pure native words are used about five times as often as one foreign term, we can have no difficulty in seeing that the pure English element greatly preponderates over the foreign element.

English is a mixed language only in regard to its vocabulary; its grammar is neither borrowed nor mixed. We cannot, therefore, speak of English as a Romance tongue; the construction and meaning of sentences depend upon the use of our grammatical inflexions, and as these are of native origin they serve still more to make the English element the essential and most important part of our language.

47. Pure English elements are:—

(1) **Grammatical inflexions.**

a. Plural suffixes of nouns (*-s*,*-n*): possessive case (*-s*).

b. Suffixes marking comparison of adjectives (*-er*, *-est*).

c. Verbal inflexions marking persons (*-st*, *-th*, *-s*); tense (*-d*, *-t*); endings of participles (*-en*, *-ing*).

d. Auxiliary words used in place of inflexions:—

i. Words used for comparing of adjectives (*more* and *most*).

ii. Auxiliary verbs (*be*, *am*, *have*, *shall*, *will*).

(2) **Grammatical words.**

a. All numerals: *one*, *two*, &c., except *second*, *million*, *billion*.

b. Demonstratives: *the*, *this*, *that*, &c.

c. Pronouns (personal, relative, &c.): *I*, *thou*, *he*, *who*, &c.

d. Many adverbs of time and place: *here*, *there*, *when*, &c.

e. Most prepositions and conjunctions.

f. All nouns forming their plural by vowel change.

g. All adjectives of irregular comparison.

h. All verbs forming their past tense by change of vowel.

i. All anomalous verbs.

j. Causative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs by vowel change.

(3) i. **Numerous suffixes** of—

a. **Nouns**, *-hood*, *-ship*, *-dom*, *-ness*, *-ing*, *-th* (*-t*), &c.

b. **Adjectives**, *-ful*, *-ly*, *-en*, *-ish*, *-some*, &c.

c. **Verbs**, *-en*, *-le*, *-er*.

ii. **Numerous prefixes.**

a, *be*, *for*, *ful*, *over*, *out*, &c.

(4). **Most monosyllabic words.**

5. **The names of most striking objects and agencies in nature as the heavenly bodies,** *sky, heaven, sun, moon, stars:* **the elements,** *fire, earth, water,* **and their natural changes,** *thunder, lightning, hail, snow, rain, wind, storm, light, heat, darkness,* &c.; **the seasons,** *spring, summer, winter;*[1] **the natural divisions of time,** *day, night, morning, evening, twilight, sunset, sunrise,* &c.; **natural features, external scenery,** *height, hill, dale, dell, sea, stream, flood, spring, well, island, land, wood, tree,* &c.; **words used in earliest childhood,** *father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, child, home, kin, friend, house, roof, hearth;* **parts of the house and household furniture,** *room, wall, yard, floor, stair, gate, stool, bed, bench, loom, spoon, cup, kettle,* &c.; **food and clothing,** *cloth, skirt, coat, shoe, hat,* &c.; *bread, loaf, milk, cake, ale, wine, beer;* **agricultural terms,** *plough, rake, harrow, scythe, barn, flail, sheaf, yoke,* &c.; **the ordinary terms of traffic,** *trade, business, cheap, dear, sell, buy, baker, miller, smith, tanner, bookseller,* &c.; **names of trees and plants,** *ash, beech, birch, oak, apple, corn, wheat,* &c.; **quadrupeds,** *deer, sheep, sow, swine, cow, horse, goat, fox, dog, hound,* &c.; **birds,** *hawk, raven, rook, crow, swan, owl, dove, lark, nightingale, hen, goose, duck, gander, drake,* &c.; **fish,** *eel, herring, lobster, otter, whale,* &c.; **insects,** *worm, adder, snake, wasp, fly, gnat,* &c.; **parts of the body of man and beast,** *flesh, skin, bone, head, limb, hand,* &c.; *horn, snout,*

[1] *Autumn* is Latin.

tail, *claw*, *hoof*, &c.; **modes of bodily actions and posture**, &c., *sit*, *stand*, *lean*, *walk*, *run*, *leap*, *stagger*, *wake*, *sleep*, *nod*, *rise*, *talk*, &c.; **emotions and passions**, &c., *love*, *hope*, *fear*, *tear*, *weep*, *laugh*, *smile*, &c.; **common colours**, *white*, *red*, *brown*, &c.

48. To the Romance and Latin elements belong many words connected with dignitaries, offices, &c. as, *duke*, *marquis*, *baron*, &c.; government, *state*, *people*, *parliament*, *treaty*, *cabinet*, *minister*, *army*, &c.; law, *attorney*, *barrister*, *damage*, *felony*, &c.; church, *baptism*, *ceremony*, *bible*, *prayer*, *preach*, *lesson*, *creed*, *evangelist*, &c.; general and abstract terms, *sense*, *emotion*, *passion*, *colour*, &c. Latin and Greek words are most numerous in scientific and philosophical works.

CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects.

49. From the eleventh to the middle of the fourteenth century there was no standard or classical language. Various forms of English were spoken in different parts of the country, and every work written during this period illustrates some local variety of the English Speech. There were three leading dialects in the fourteenth century; Southern, Midland, and Northern, each distinguished by certain grammatical peculiarities.

Thus in a work written South of the Thames the verb in the plural of the present indicative ends in **-eth**, as we **habbeth**, we have: a work composed between the Thames and Humber has **-en** instead of **-eth**, as we **habben.**

A Northern writer in the district between the Humber and the Firth of Forth avoids the use of **-eth** and **-en**, and substitutes **-es** for them, or, as is frequently the case, uses an uninflected form, as we **haves**, or we **have.**

Southern.—"We hopieth for to habbe heuenriche blisce": "Ye habbeth iherd thet godspel." (Kentish Sermons, A.D. 1240—50.)

Bote the Flemynges that woneth in the west syde of Wales habbeth yleft here straunge speche, and speketh Saxonlych ynow. (Trevisa, A.D. 1387.)

Midland.— Thei knelen alle, and with o vois
The King thei thonken of this chois.
(Gower, A.D. 1393.)

We hauen shep, and we hauen swin. (Havelok the Dane, before 1300.)

Northern.—Tharfor maysters soom tyme uses the wand that has childer to lere under thair hand. (Hampole, 1340.)

Thir twa heuens ay obout-rynnes
Both day and nyght, and neuer blynnes.
(*Ib.*)

Modern English has sprung from the East-Midland Dialect.

50. The Midland dialect between the Thames and the Humber covered a very large area and had various local varieties.

The most important of these was the East-Midland spoken in Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, which had many words and grammatical forms in common with the Northern dialects.

As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century it had thrown off most of the older inflexions (preserved by the Southern dialects) and was almost as flexionless as our own. It had an extensive literature and numbered among its writers, Ormin, Robert of Brunne, Wicliffe, Gower and Chaucer. Of all these, Chaucer was the author whose works were most popular and widely diffused. Successive writers, as Hoccleve, Lydgate, and Heywood, took him for their model, and thus his influence did not die out till a great change caused by the revival of learning, and

other important circumstances in the reigns of the Tudors had brought about a new era in the language and literature.

It was Chaucer's influence then that caused the East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects and to assume the position of the standard literary English, from which has come in a direct line with but few flexional changes the language spoken and written by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British Empire.

50*a*. **Periods of the English Language.**—A language is said to be dead when it is no longer spoken. Such a language cannot be altered; but a living language is always undergoing some change or other. We do not always take note of it, because it is so very gradual; but when we compare the writers of one period with those of another, we have plain evidence of the fact. The farther we go back in this comparison the greater the changes appear, and our language in its earliest period looks very much like a foreign tongue.

In referring to the earlier periods or stages of growth through which our language has passed, we shall distinguish the following divisions:—

(1) **Old English** (A.D. 456—1100).—The language of this period is inflexional. Its vocabulary contains few or no foreign elements. Its poetry is alliterative. To this period belong the writings of *Cædmon*, *Alfred*, and *Ælfric*.

(2) **Early English** (A.D. 1100—1250).—The language in this period shows many changes both in orthography and grammar. In the first part of this

period the modifications were chiefly orthographical, but they affected the endings of words, and thus led the way to the grammatical changes which took place in the latter part of the thirteenth century.

To the earlier part of this period belong the following works: the *Brut*, written by *Layamon;* the *Ormulum*, by *Ormin;* the *Ancren Riwle*, &c. To the latter half belong the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, the *Owl and Nightingale*, &c.

(3) **Middle English** (A.D. 1250—1485).—Most of the older inflexions of nouns and adjectives have now disappeared. The verbal inflexions are much altered, and many strong verbs have been replaced by weak ones. To the first half of this period belong a *Metrical Chronicle*, and *Lives of Saints*, attributed to Robert of Gloucester; Langtoft's *Metrical Chronicle*, translated by *Robert of Brunne*, and the *Handlyng Synne*, by the same writer; the *Pricke of Conscience*, by Hampole; the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, by Dan Michel of Northgate, Kent. To the second half belong the works of *Wicliffe*, *William Langley* (or *Langland*), *Gower*, and *Chaucer*, &c.

(4) **Modern English,** from A.D. 1485 to the present time. We might subdivide this period into two parts, calling the language in the earlier period from 1485 to 1600 **Tudor English.**

CHAPTER IV.

Sounds and Letters.

(1) Letters.

51. Letters are conventional signs employed to represent sounds. They have grown out of the old pictorial mode of writing, and were at first abbreviated pictures.[1]

In the oldest alphabets, a letter does not represent an indivisible sound (consonant *or* vowel), but a syllable (consonant *and* vowel).

After a time the consonants were looked upon as the most important part, and consequently they alone were written, or written in full, while the vowel was either omitted or represented by some less conspicuous symbol.

Such was the character of the old Phœnician alphabet, from which have come the Hebrew, Syriac, Arabic, Sanskrit, and Greek alphabets.

The **Latin** alphabet, derived from one of the older forms of the Greek, is the parent of our own symbols.

[1] Cp. the names of the letters in Hebrew and Greek, *b* = *beth* (house), *Beta*: *g* = *gimel* (camel), *Gamma*; *d* = *daleth* (door), *Delta*.

The oldest English alphabet consisted of twenty-four[1] letters, all except three being Roman characters: þ, (*thorn* = *th*); and ƿ (*wên* = *w*), are Runic letters; Ð, ð is merely a crossed *d* used instead of the *thorn*. **j** is another form of **i**, and **v** of **u**. **w** is a doubling of **u**.

(2) Sounds.

52. The spoken alphabet is composed of sounds produced by the articulating organs (or organs of speech), *throat*, *tongue*, *palate*, *lips*, &c., which serve to modify the breath as it issues from the larynx.

There are two great divisions of Sounds:

Vowels and Consonants.

The **Vowels** are the open sounds of a language. In a vowel sound the emission of the breath is modified by the organs of speech, but is not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs. In the Indo-European speech there were only three original short vowels **a**, **i**, **u** (*far*, *bit*, *full*), from which have sprung the long vowels **a** (*father*), **i** (*machine*), **u** (*fool*).

The dipthongs are formed in passing from one vowel sound to another: the oldest are **e** = **a** + **i** (*fête*), **o** = **a** + **u** (*note*). All the varieties of vowel sounds,

[1] See Whitney, "Language and the study of Language," p. 465 (1867).

(and they may be almost infinite) are modifications of the three original vowels (**a, i, u.**)

The **Consonants** are closer sounds than the vowels and less musical. They are produced by the contact of one or other of the organs of speech, whereby the stream of breath is wholly or partially stopped. In the oldest Indo-European speech there were only twelve consonant sounds, **b, p, d, t, g, k, s, m, n, l, r**; and **h** in combination with **b, d, g,** forming the aspirates **bh, dh, gh** (cp. Gr. ϕ, θ, χ).

53. **Classification of Consonants.**—The consonants can be arranged according to the organ by which they are sounded: **Guttural** (*g, k*): **Dental** (*d, t, th*), **Labial** (*b, p, v, f,*) &c. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit. Stopped sounds are called **mutes** or **checks**, as **g, k, d, t, b, p.**

In the sounds **m, n, ng**, the breath passes through the nose, and they are called **nasals.**

Partially stopped sounds are termed **Spirants**, as, **h, th, f, s, z, &c.**; **l** and **r** are called **Trills.**

54. In comparing **b** and **p** &c., **d** and **t** &c., we shall find that **b** and **d** are pronounced with less effort than **p** and **t**; hence **b** and **d**, &c. are said to be **soft or flat**, while **p** and **t**, &c. are called **hard or sharp** consonants.

55. Table of Consonant Sounds.

	MUTES.			SPIRANTS.		
	Flat.	Sharp.	Nasal.	Flat.	Sharp.	Trilled.
Gutturals .	**G**	**K**	**NG**		**Ch** (loch) **H**	
Palatals .	**J**	**Ch**			**Y** (yea)	
Palatal Sibilants				**Zh** (azure)	**Sh** (sure)	**R**
Dental Sibilants				**Z** (prize, rise)	**S** (mouse)	**L**
Dentals .	**D**	**T**	**N**	**Dh** (bathe)	**Th** (bath)	
Labials . .	**B**	**P**	**M**	**V** **W** (witch)	**F** **Hw** (which)	

56. **Ch** and **j** (in English) are compounds: **ch** = *t* + *sh* (sure); **j** = *d* + *zh* (azure).

Zh and **sh** are connected with the *palatals*, while **z** and **s** are allied to the dental, or lingual series of sounds.

57. From this table of consonants we have omitted

(1) **c**; because it can be represented by **k** before **a, o, u,** and by **s** (in *rice*) before **e, i, y.**

(2) **q**; because it is equivalent to **kw.**

(3) **x**; because it is a compound of **ks,** as in *fox.*

Number of Elementary Sounds in the English spoken Alphabet.

58. In addition to the twenty-four consonants contained in the above table, we have fourteen vowels and five diphthongs, making altogether **forty-three** sounds.

I.—Consonants.

1. *b.*	9. *m.*	17. *y.*
2. *d.*	10. *n.*	18. *z.*
3. *f.*	11. *p.*	19. *ch.*
4. *g.*	12. *r.*	20. *dh* (bathe).
5. *h.*	13. *s.*	21. *th* (bath).
6. *j.*	14. *t.*	22. *zh* (azure).
7. *k.*	15. *v.*	23. *sh* (sure).
8. *l.*	16. *w.*	24. *hw* (what).

II.—Vowels.

25. *a* in gnat.	32. *e* in meet.
26. *a* in pair, ware.	33. *i* in knit.
27. *a* fame.	34. *o* in not.
28. *a* father.	35. *o* in note.
29. *a* all.	36. *oo* in fool, rude.
30. *a* want.	37. *oo* in wood, put.
31. *e* in met.	38. *u* in nut.

III.—Diphthongs.

39. *i* in high.
40. *i* in aye.
41. *oi* in boil.
42. *ow* in how bound.
43. *ew* in mew.

Imperfections of the English Alphabet.

59. A perfect alphabet must be based upon phonetic principles, and (1) every simple sound must be represented by a distinct symbol; (2) no sound must be represented by more than one sign.

a. The spoken alphabet contains forty-three sounds, but the *written* alphabet has only twenty-six letters or symbols to represent them; therefore in the first point necessary to a perfect system of orthography the English alphabet is found wanting.

The alphabet, as we have seen, is *redundant*, containing three superfluous letters, *c*, *q*, *x*, so that it contains only twenty-three letters wherewith to represent forty-three sounds. Again, the five vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, have to represent thirteen sounds (see § 58). It is thus both imperfect and redundant.

The same combinations of letters, too, have distinct sounds, as *ough* in bough, borough, cough, chough, hough, hiccough, though, trough, through, Sc. sough; *ea* in beat, bear, heard, &c.

b. In regard to the second point, that no sound should be represented by more than one sign, we again find that the English alphabet fails. The letter *ō* (in *note*) may be represented by *oa* (boat), *oe* (toe), *eo* (yeoman), *ou* (soul), *ow* (sow), *ew* (sew), *au* (hautboy), *eau* (beau), *owe* (owe), *oo* (floor), *oh* (oh!). The alphabet is therefore *inconsistent* as well as *imperfect*.

Many letters are silent as in *psalm*, *calf*, *could*, *gnat*, *know*, &c.

c. The English alphabet is supplemented by a number of double letters called *digraphs* (*oa*, *oo*, &c.)

which are as inconsistently employed as the simple characters themselves.

d. Other expedients for remedying the defects of the alphabet are recognised—

(1) The use of a final *e* to denote a long vowel, as *bite*, *note*, &c.[1] But even with regard to this *e* the orthography is not consistent; it will not allow a word to end in *v*, although the preceding vowel is short, hence an *e* is retained in *live*, *give*, &c.

(2) The doubling of consonants to indicate a short vowel, as *folly*, *hotter*, &c.[2]

It must be recollected that the letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, were originally devised and intended to represent the vowel sounds heard in *father*, *prey*, *pique*, *pole*, *rule*, respectively. In other languages that employ them they still have this value.

During the written period of our language the pronunciation of the vowels has undergone great and extensive changes at different periods, while the spelling has not kept pace with these changes, so that there has arisen a great dislocation of our orthographical system, a divorcement of our written from our spoken alphabet. The introduction of foreign elements into the English language during its written period has brought into use different, and often discordant, systems of orthography (cp. *ch* in *church*, *chivalry*, *Christian*, &c.). In addition to this there are peculiarities arising out of the orthographical usages of the Old-English dialects.

[1] This came about because the final *e* was kept in writing after the sound was dropped. The *i* in *bite* was long while the word was dissyllabic.

[2] This arose through the short vowel causing the doubling of the consonant.

CHAPTER V.

Permutation or Interchange of Sounds.

60. The sounds of a language are liable to certain changes.

One sound often passes into another.

(1) The vowels are subject to almost infinite variations: thus, short **a**, as in *gnat*, has kept its place in *land*, *band*, &c., but has become **ai** in *name*, and **o** in *swan*, and **ou** in *bound* (O.E. *band*), &c. Long **a** has passed into **ô** in *home* (= hâm), *bone* (= bân), &c. Long **i** (as in *machine*), has become **i** in *bite*, *drive*, &c. Long **u** (as in *pool*) has become **ou**, as in *house* (= hûs).

(2) The consonants also pass into one another, and the laws governing these changes may be arranged under the following heads.

i. All sounds uttered by the same organ are interchangeable, as **b** and **p**, &c., **d** and **t**, &c. To ascertain these, read *across* the table in sect. 55.

ii. Sounds belonging to the same series though uttered by different organs, are interchangeable. Thus, the spirants **f** and **th**; **th** and **s**; **l** and **r**,

&c., often interchange. Read the columns *downwards* in section 55.

iii. Combination of consonants leads to assimilation of the one to the other, as *gospel* = *gos-spel* = O.E. *godspel; ditto* = Latin *dictum.*

61. **Sounds belonging to the same organ interchange.**—The most common change of sounds belonging to the same organ is the passing of a sharp into its corresponding flat mute, or *vice versâ.* Pass from col. 1 to col. 2 in section 55. Sometimes the mutes and the aspirates of the same organ interchange.

Labials.—**B** has become **p** in *gossip* = O.E. *godsib.* **P** has become **b** in *cobweb* = M.E. *copweb.* **F** has become **v** in *vixen* = *fixen* from *fox; vat* = *fat.* Cp. *wife* and *wives.* **B** and **p** change to **v**, as in *have* = O.E. *habban; knave* = O.E. *cnapa.* **B** and **v** sometimes pass into their corresponding nasal **m**, *summerset* = Fr. *soubresaut; malmsey* = O.Fr. *malvoisie;* **M** changes to **b** in *marble,* = Lat. *marmor.*

Dentals.—**D** becomes **t** in *clot* = *clod; abbot* = O.E. *abbod.* **T** passes into **d** in *card* = *chart,* Fr. *carte,* Lat. *charta; pedigree* = T.E. *petigree.* **D** and **t** become **th** in *father, mother,* O.E. *fader, moder; author* = O.E. *autour,* Lat. *auctor.* **Th** has become **d** in *could* = O.E. *cuthe; bedlam* = *Bethlehem;* it passes into **t** in *nostril* = O.E. *nas-thyrlu* = M.E. *nos-thirles.*

Gutturals.—**K** has become **g** in *wig* = *periwig* = *peruque; goblet* = Fr. *gobelet* = M.Lat. *cupelletum.*

Palatals.—**Ch** and **j** interchange in *jaw* = *chaw, a-jar* = *a-char.*

62. Sounds belonging to the same series interchange:—

i. The **Spirants** interchange with one another, **F** = **th**. Children often say *fumb* for *thumb*. Cp. *dwarf*, M.E. *dwerth* and *dwerg* = O.E. *thweorh;* Russian *Fedor* = *Theodore*. **F** often represents an older **h** or **gh**, as *cough*, *laugh*, &c. **Th** becomes **s** as *loves* = *loveth*. **S** between two vowels often becomes an **r** instead of **z**. Cp. *are* = *ase*, *were* = *wese*. Cp. *forlorn* = *forlosen; frore* (Milton) = *frozen; varlet* = M. Lat. *vassaletus*.

ii. **Trills.—L** and **r** very frequently pass into one another, as *marble* = Fr. *marbre*, Lat. *marmor; palfrey* = Fr. *palefroi* = Lat. *paraveredus; slander* = Fr. *esclandre* = Lat. *scandalum; chapter* = Fr. *chapitre* = Lat. *capitulum*.

iii. **Gutturals and Palatals.—K** has become **ch**, as *chin*, *child* = O.E. *cin*, *cild; ditch* and *which* = O.E. *dic* and *hwilc*. **G** has become **j** in *singe* = O.E. *besengan; bridge* = O.E. *brycg*, M.E. *brigge*. Cp. *joy* = Fr. *jouir*, Lat. *gaudere*.

63. Combination of Consonants causes assimilation. When two consonants come together the first is made like the second, or the second like the first. Cp. *best* = *bes-st* = *bet-st; ad-vise* with *at-tend*, and *absorb* with *absorption*. The above examples show us that we cannot keep every combination of sounds. Thus, we may write *cupboard*, but we must pronounce it *cubboard*.

The general law for the combination of consonant

sounds is, that a flat sound must be followed by a flat sound, and a sharp by a sharp sound.

This has an important bearing in English upon (1) the plural of nouns, (2) the possessive case of nouns, (3) the third person singular of verbs, (4) the past tense and passive participle of verbs.

Flat + Flat.

(1) *Slabs = slabz; lads = ladz; wives = wivz.*

(2) *Dog's = dog'z.*

(3) *Wags = wagz; stabs = stabz; bathes = bathez.*

(4) *Dubbed = dubd; hugged = hugd.*

Sharp + Sharp.

(1) *Slaps, mats, reefs.*

(2) *Cat's, bank's.*

(3) *Reaps, fasts.*

(4) *Weeped* has become *wept; lacked = lackt.*

64. Some sounds are more difficult to pronounce than others. Difficult sounds, as gutturals, often pass into easier sounds as spirants, or into mere breathings; sometimes they disappear altogether. This explains—

(1) The loss of gutturals at the end of words, as *godly* = O.E. *godlic; I* = O.E. *Ic; day* = O.E. *dæg*, &c.

(2) The silent letters in *through, though, high*, &c.

(3) The *f* sound in *laugh, cough*, &c.

(4) The *y* sound in *year*, O.E. *ger.*

(5) The *ow* in *tallow*, M.E. *talgh.*

65. The pronunciation of one sound is rendered easier by an additional one. Thus, **m** often becomes **mb** or **mp**, and **n** changes to **nd** or **nt**. Also **s** becomes **st**.

(**B** and **p** come in after **m**, because they are Labials, and **d**, **t** after **n**, because they are Dentals.)

(1) *Slumber* = O.E. *slumerian; nimble* = O.E. *nimol; number* = Lat. *numerus; empty* = O.E. *emtig; tempt* = Lat. *tentare.*

(2) *Thunder* = O.E. *thunor; hind* = O.E. *hine; tender* = Lat. *tener; ancient* = O.Fr. *ancien; tyrant* = Fr. *tiran.*

(3) *Amongst* = M.E. *amonges; whilst* = M.E. *whiles*, &c.

66. Occasionally certain combinations of sounds become difficult, and one of the sounds is dropped. Thus, **-nf**, **-nth**, and **-ns**, have become **-f**, **-th**, and **-s**. Cp. *soft* with Germ. *sanft; tooth* with Goth. *tunthus*, Germ. *zahn; goose* (O.E. *gôs*) with Germ. *gans.*

Grimm's Law of Permutation of Consonants.

67. We have seen that one sound may pass into another, and also that one sound is often preferred to another, especially by children in learning to speak, who say *nuffink* for *nothing*, and *poot* for *foot*, &c.

Dialects are often distinguished by their preference for particular sounds. In the south-west of England **v** and **z** are used instead of **f** and **s**, as *vinger* (finger), *zing* (sing). Languages of the same class exhibit a

similar partiality; thus, where we have **d** and **th** the Germans employ **th** (= **t**) and **d**. Cp. *deer* = Ger. *thier* = O.H.Ger. *tier; thorn* = Ger. *dorn.*

This substitution of one sound for another extends to all the languages of the Indo-European family, and for the most part follows the rules already laid down for the Permutation of Sounds. (1) All sounds pronounced by the same organ are interchangeable; (2) All sounds of the same series are liable to pass into one another. We can read table in sect. 55 across or downwards.

The collection of rules by which we can at once tell what sounds in one language correspond to those of its kindred tongues, is called GRIMM'S LAW.

To render the law as simple as possible, we must bear in mind, (1) the three-fold division of sounds into **Aspirate**, **Flat**, and **Sharp**, according to the following arrangement :—

Names.	Aspirate.	Flat or Soft.	Sharp or Hard.
Labial . . .	f	b	p
Dental . . .	th	d	t
Guttural . . .	h	g	k (c)

(2) the classification of the Indo-European languages into three groups.

I. **Classical** (Greek, Latin, Sanskrit, &c.)
II. **Low-German** (English, &c.)
III. **High-German.**

(1) Grimm's Law shows us that an **Aspirate** in I. the *Classical* Languages is represented by a **flat** in II. *Low-German*, and by a **sharp** in III. *High-German*.

(2) **A Flat** mute in I. corresponds to a **sharp** in II. and an **aspirate** in III.

(3) **A Sharp** consonant in I. corresponds to an **aspirate** in II. and a **flat** in III.

I.	Classical . .	Aspirate	Flat	Sharp
II.	Low German	Flat	Sharp	Aspirate
III.	High German	Sharp	Aspirate	Flat

ILLUSTRATIONS.

I.

Mnemonic[1] ASH	Classical.	Low German.	O.H.German.
	Aspirate.	Soft *or* Flat.	Hard *or* Sharp
Labials . . .	*f*rater	*b*rother	*þ*ruoder
Dentals . . .	θυγατηρ	*d*aughter	*t*ohtar Ger. *t*ochter
Gutturals . .	χήν, anser (= hanser)	*g*oose	*k*ans

[1] If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

II.

Mnemonic[1] SHA	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Soft *or* Flat.	Hard *or* Sharp.	Aspirate.
Labials .	*κάννα ::s*	hem*p*	hana*f* (Ger. han*f*)
Dentals .	*d*omare, *d*uo	*t*ame, *t*wo	*z*ëman, *z*vei (Ger. *z*wei)
Gutturals .	e*g*o, *g*enu	O.E. I*c*, *k*nee	I*h*, (Ger. ic*h*)

III.

Mnemonic[1] HAS	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Hard *or* Sharp	Aspirate.	Soft *or* Flat.
Labials .	*p*ater	*f*ather	*v*atar (Ger *v*ater.)
Dentals .	*t*u, *t*res	*th*ou, *th*ree	*d*u, *d*ri (Ger. drei)
Gutturals .	so*c*er o*c*to *c*aput	sweor (= sweo*hr*) ei*gh*t *h*ead (O.E. *h*eafod)	Ger. schwa*g*er Ger. a*ch*t (irreg.) *h*oupit (Ger. *h*aupt)

SUPPRESSION, ADDITION, AND TRANSPOSITION OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

68. There are other changes of letters that demand a slight notice. Sounds are (1) dropped, (2) added, (3) transposed.

[1] If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

(1) Dropping of Letters.

Sounds fall away from—

I. the beginning of a word (*Aphæresis*).

II. the end of a word (*Apocope*).

III. the body of a word, causing coalescence of two sounds (*Syncope*).

Accent plays an important part in these changes, unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and are thus more liable to drop off.

I. Aphæresis.

reeve	=	O.E. ge-refa.
sport	=	E.E. disport.
bishop	=	Lat. episcopus.
diamond	=	Fr. diamant, Lat. adamans.

II. Apocope.

before	=	O.E. beforan.
riddle	=	O.E. ræd-els.
riches	=	E.E. richesse.
maugre	=	Lat. male-gratum.
pork	=	Fr. porc, Lat. porcus.

III. Syncope.

brain	=	O.E. brægen.
head	=	O.E. heafod.
sexton	=	sacristan.
palsy	=	paralysis.
caitiff	=	Fr. chétif, Lat. captivus.
cruel	=	Lat. crudelis.
pray	=	Fr. prier, Lat. precari.
church	=	O.E. cyrice.
mint	=	O.E. mynet, Lat. moneta.
bounty	=	Fr. bonté, Lat. bonitatem.
clergy	=	Fr. clergé, Lat. clericatus.

(2) Addition of Letters.

Letters may be added to the primitive form
I. at the beginning of a word (*Prothesis*).
II. at the end of a word (*Epithesis*).
III. in the body of a word (*Epenthesis*).

I. Prothesis.

h, haughty, Lat. altus, Fr. haut.

n (from the indef. article), newt (= an ewt); nouch (= an ouch).

s, scramble, scratch, squeeze.

II. Epithesis.

d (after an originally final ë), wicked, wretched.

d (after the letter **n**), sound. *See* § 65, p. 46.

h (after **s**), push, nourish.

t (after **n**). *See* § 65, p. 46.

t (after **s**). *See* § 65, p. 46.

III. Epenthesis.

b (after **m**). *See* § 65, p. 46.

p (after **m**). *See* § 65, p. 46.

d (after **l**), **alder** (-liefest), M.E. *aller*, *i.e.* of all.

n (before **t**), **lantern** (Lat. *laterna*).

n (before **g**), **messenger, passenger.**

r, groom, hoarse, culprit.

Some letters are merely orthographical blunders, having crept in through a false etymology or analogy.

l in **could** because of *should, would.*

h in **lanthorn** from a supposed connection with *horn;* and in **rhyme** from a supposed connection with *rhythm.*

th in farther (because confused with *further*).

s in island (as if derived from *isle*).

w in whole and its derivatives.

x in pickaxe (as if connected with *axe*. Cp. M.E. *picoys*).

(3) Metathesis, or Transposition of Letters.

r third for *thrid* (cp. three), nostrils (for *nosthirls*), cp. trouble with *dis-turb*.

ps becomes **sp**, clasped (= M.E. *clapsed*), wasp (= O.E. *wæps*).

sc becomes **cs** or **x**, hoax (O.E. *husc*), cp. O.E. *ascian*, M.E. axe for *ask*.

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology.

69. **Etymology** treats of the classification, structure, and history of words; its chief divisions are inflexion and derivation.

Parts of Speech.

70. Words are arranged in classes, according to the functions they perform in a sentence; these classes are called the Parts of Speech.[1]

Declinable	1. Noun. 2. Adjective. 3. Pronoun. 4. Verb.
Indeclinable	5. Adverb. 6. Preposition. 7. Conjunction. 8. Interjection.

Inflexion and Derivation.

71. The changes which words undergo to mark case, gender, number, comparison, tense, person, &c., are called *inflexions.*

[1] Speech here means language.

The inflexion of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension;* when applied to verbs, it is called *conjugation.*

A *root* or *radical* is that part of a word which cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form.

According to their origin, roots are either *predicative*, as *horse*, *white*, *write*, &c.; or *demonstrative*, as *he*, *the*, &c.

When the root is modified by a suffix, it is called a *derivative;* thus *wil-ful*, *good-ly*, *tru-th*, are derived respectively from *will*, *good*, and *true.*

Derivates may be native or foreign, as *know-ledge* (English), *sci-ence* (Latin). *Cognates* must be carefully distinguished from *derived* words: thus *father* is cognate with the Latin *pater*. but *paternal* is derived from *pater.*

Two cognate forms of the same class may exist side by side; *from* (English), and *fro* (Scandinavian).

When a derivative or compound consists of elements belonging to different languages, it is called a hybrid, as *shepherd-ess* (English + Romance), *socialism*, (Latin + Greek).

A word containing two roots is called a *compound*, as *shep-herd*, *fore-man*, *break-fast*, &c.

Prefixes like *be*, *fore*, *with*, &c., are compounded with verbs as *be-speak*, *fore-tell*, *with-stand*, &c.

Compounds like *won't*, *nill*, (will not) are called agglutinative compounds. This term might be applied to all compounds, in which the elements are intimately fused; as *none*, *naught*, *fortnight*, *gospel*, &c.

72. Suffixes of inflexion and derivation are called *formative* elements.

All Suffixes are shortened forms of predicative or demonstrative roots.

The first step towards inflexion is *collocation*, just as

good-like has given us *goodly*. *See* Suffixes of Predicative origin.

The suffix *-s* in Gothic *hund-s*, Lat. *cani-s*, which marks the nominative case, is nothing more than a shortened form of the old demonstrative pronoun, *sa*, O.E. *se*, the, that.

Thus *vox* = *voc-s*, the calling, the voice; *rex* = *reg-s*, the ruling-one, the king.

The ending *-th* in the third person sing. of verbs, as *love-th*, is another form of our demonstrative *the, tha-t*.

73. That which was not originally an inflexion often by usage becomes one. Thus the vowel change in the plural of nouns, and in the past tense of strong verbs was not originally an inflexion.

In *feet, teeth*, &c., a vowel and a plural suffix (*s*) have been lost from a very early period. *See* Plurals of Nouns by Vowel change.

The vowel change in *held, fell*, &c. is due to an original reduplication. *See* Strong Verbs.

The addition of a syllable causes a change in the root-vowel Cp. *nātion*, and *nătional: fore*, and *forehead: break*, and *breakfast*.

The loss of an internal letter causes the lengthening of a vowel, as *right* (pronounced *rīte*) was originally *rĭht*. Cp. *ewt* from *evet*, *lord* from *hlaford*.

The suffix *-n* in ox-*en* was not originally a sign of the plural, but was added to the root, before the addition of the ordinary plural sign *-s*. After a time the *-s* dropped off leaving the inserted letter *n* to represent the plural inflexion. Cp. *eaves, alms, riches*, &c., which are now treated like plurals in -s.

The primitive plural of *ox* was not *oxan* but *oxans*. *Chicken* was once used as a plural, but the *-en* is no plural sign. In O.E. the plural of *chicken* = *cycen-u* from *cycen*, a *chicken*: after

a time it became *chicken-e*, or *chicken*. Cp. M.E. *lenden* for *lenden-u* or *lenden-e*, loins.

Such nouns as *song*, *band*, &c. are usually treated as derivatives of the verbs *sing*, *bind*, &c. This is an erroneous view. The O.E. *sang*, *band*, show that these words are the roots of which *sing* and *bind* are weakened forms.

74. The same word has sometimes come to have two different forms, with different functions, as *to* and *too*; *of* and *off*: *through* and *thorough*; *one* and *an*, &c.

75. The loss of inflexion is supplied by the use of independent roots. *Case-endings* are replaced by *prepositions*; *verbal endings* by *auxiliary verbs*. Cp. the use of the prepositions *of* and *to* for the old genitive and dative inflexions: *do*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, &c. in the formation of tenses: *more* and *most* instead of *-er* and *-est* in the comparison of adjectives.

The preposition *to* has replaced the infinitive ending *-an* (*-en*) as, *drinc-an* = *to* drink.

76. There is a tendency in all languages to simplify whatever has become complex or obsolete.

Thus the plural suffix *-s* has replaced various others, in *eyes*, *hands*, *sisters*, = O.E. *eâg-an*, *hand-a*, *swustr-u*.

Many strong verbs have conformed to the weak or regular conjugation, as *helped*, O.E. *heolp*, &c. *See* remarks on Gender and Number of Nouns, and on Strong Verbs.

77. To supply losses, the functions of other parts of speech have been extended. The loss of the old

relative pronouns *se, the*, &c. left us the neuter indeclinable *that;* after a time the interrogatives were employed in their stead. *See* Relative Pronouns.

78. The English language has lost most of the older inflexions, hence its words are no longer formally distinguished (as in Latin, Greek, &c.) as belonging to certain parts of speech without reference to their use in a sentence. The functions of words like *homo, amare*, &c. are limited, but in English almost any part of speech may be used as any other part of speech.[1]

Thus a verb may become a noun without any change of form.

"They think nothing they shall from it pass,
When all that is shall be turned to *was*."
HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*

"For He [God] is wythoute *wes*, wythoute *ssel by*,"
(For He is without *was*, and without *shall be*.)
Ayenbite, p. 104.

Even in Shakespeare the preterite of a verb has been converted into a substantive: a feat not easily performed by any synthetical language, cp.

"No *had*, my Lord!" *King John*, iv. 2, 207.

'This formal fool, your man, speaks nought but proverbs; and speak men, what they can to him, he'll answer with some rhyme-rotten sentence, or old saying: such *spokes* as the ancient of the parish use."
H. PORTER'S *Two Angry Women of Abingdon.*

"Where Galaad made his avowes and *hightes* (promises)."
HARDYNG'S *Chronicle*, p. 133.

Hight = the preterite of the old verb *hatan* to call, promise.

[1] See Abbott's "Shakspearian Grammar.

A substantive is easily used as a verb, thus Fuller in speaking of those writers who multiply on the map of the Holy Land streams bearing the name of "River of Egypt," says:—

"Such is the nimiety of my caution herein, who have *Egypt rivered* this map to purpose."
FULLER, *A Pisgah sight of Palestine*, p. 618, ed. 1869.

"Do you think I *fable* with you."
BEN JONSON'S *Alchemist.*

"*Rob.* 'Las sir, that lamb
Were most unnatural that should hate the dam.
Steph. Lamb me no lambs, Sir.
ROWLEY, *A New Wonder.*

Adjectives are used as verbs without even the verbal ending **-en.** Shakespeare uses *to fat*, to fatten. Cp. thai *greteth* = grandescunt, *become great* (Palladius, *On Husbondrie*).

In Latin, nominal verbs are not uncommon, but they have a verbal form given them by the suffix to which the inflexions are added as *arbor-esc-o* from *arbor*, a tree. Fuller renders "*Hæc planta in Judæâ* aborescit" by—

"Hissop *doth tree it* in Judæa."
A Pisgah Sight, p. 194.

An adverb may do duty for a verb, as:—

"They *askance* their eyes.
SHAKSPEARE'S *Rape of Lucrece.*

Cp. "To *back* the horses," &c.

A preposition and a numeral, originally forming an adverbial phrase, has established itself as a verb and produced a noun. Cp. *atone* and *atonement.*

"The constable is called to *atone* the broil."
T. HEYWOOD'S *English Traveller.*

"To *atone* two Israelites at variance."
FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p. 519.

Any noun may be turned into an adjective; as a *gold* watch, a *church* steeple, a *silk* thread.

By the simple use of the suffix *-ed* (= possessing), we are able to give a participial, and therefore an adjective appearance to almost any noun. Cp. *booted, spurred, one-eyed*, &c.

"As the Jews' coats were *collared* above, so they were *skirted* and *fringed* below, by God's special command."
FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p. 524.

Adjectives are easily converted into nouns. Cp. *simples, worthies, seconds.*

"When I first took thee, 'twas for *good* and *bad.*
O change thy *bad* to *good.*"
T. HEYWOOD, *The late Lancashire Witches.*

"Fear not my fall; the *steep* is fairest *plain.*"
LORD BROOKE'S *Alaham.*

"O these *extremes* of misery and joy.
. . . . . .
'Tis said sometimes they'll [evil spirits] impudently stand
A flight of beams from the *forlorn* of day,
And scorn the crowing of the sprightly cocks."
J. CROWNE'S *Thyestes.*

"And shall the *baser* over-rule the *better?*
Or are they better since they are the bigger."
CHAPMAN'S *Byron's Tragedy.*

"Jove but my *equal*, Cæsar but my *second.*"
BEN JONSON'S *Sad Shepherd.*

Even pronominal forms are occasionally employed as nouns :—

" The cruel'st *she* alive."
SHAKESPEARE *Twelfth Night*, Act I. Sc. 5.

" The *shes* of Italy."
Cymbeline, Act I. Sc. 4.

" A wretch, a worm, a *nothing*."
FORD'S *'Tis Pity*, &c.

" Speak of thy fair *self*, Edith."
J. FLETCHER'S *Bloody Brother*.

" An unthroughfaresome *whatkin*" (an impenetrable something).—FAIRFAX.

Interjections may be converted into substantives or verbs :—

" The effect of thine *O-yes*."
DEKKER, *Gull's Hornbook*.

" All the *fohs* in fairest ladys' mouths."
Ib.

" This sorrowful *heigho*."
NASH, *Lenten Stuff*.

" Cough and *hem*."

" *Mew* at passionate speeches."
Ib.

Mum and *hem* are used as adjectives in the following passage :—

" Now pleased, now froward, now *mum*, now *hem*."
Calisto and Melibœa.

A slight change of pronunciation replaces an inflexion. Cp. **bathe** and **bath, glaze** and **glass, co'nduct** and **condu'ct.**

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns.

I. GENDER.

79. **Gender** is a grammatical distinction and applies to *words* only. Sex is a natural distinction, and applies to *living objects.*

By personification we can speak of inanimate things as male or female, as

" The *Sun* in *his* glory, the *Moon* in *her* wane."

In the oldest English, *Sun* was treated as a feminine noun, and *Moon* as masculine. This usage was kept up as late as the fourteenth century, and later still in rare instances.

80. In the oldest English, the grammatical distinction of words as masculine, feminine and neuter, was marked by difference of endings, and difference of declensions.

Nouns ending in **-dom**, as *freedom* (freedom) were masculine; nouns ending in **-ung**, as *gretung* (greeting), and in **-nes**, as *godnes* (godness), were feminine; and some diminutives in **-en**, as *mægden* (maiden), and *cycen* (chicken), were neuter; *wife* and *child* were originally neuter; *tongue*, *earth*, *week*, &c. were feminine, and *star*, *sea*, *tear*, &c. were masculine nouns.

Adjectives and many demonstrative and indefinite pronouns, (*he*, *the*, *this*, *such*, *an*, *some*, &c.) were declined in three genders, and agreed with the substantives to which they were joined in gender as well as in number and case.

81. After the Norman Conquest, adjectives and adjective pronouns lost most of their case-suffixes in the three genders, so that the older distinctions could not well be kept up. In the fourteenth century, the genders of nouns were exchanged for mere marks of sex, names of males being of the *masculine* gender, those of females of the *feminine* gender, and the names of inanimate things of the *neuter* gender; so that, strictly speaking, the so-called *genders* in modern English do not belong to the *words* at all, but only to the objects they represent. The only *genders* in English are in the Pronouns.

82. There are three ways of distinguishing the masculine and feminine.

I. By the use of suffixes.

II. By composition.

III. By using distinct words for the name of the male and female.

Only the first method comes under the head of grammatical gender.

I.—Gender marked by Differences of Endings.

83. *A.*—Teutonic Suffixes.

These are now no longer in general use.

We have a trace of two old English suffixes to mark the feminine: (1) **-en**, (2) **-ster.**

Vix-en (O.E. *Fyx-en*), the feminine of **fox** (M.E.

vox), is the only one we have preserved out of a tolerably large number once in common use in the oldest English, as

Masc.	Fem.
ælf (elf).	ælf-en (she-elf).
câs-ere (emperor).	câser-en (empress).
munec (monk).	munec-en (nun).
theôw (man-servant).	thêow-en (maid-servant).

In the fourteenth century the feminine in **-en** is rarely met with.

The change from **o** to **i** is regular when compared with the old English **god** (god), **gyd-en** (goddess), and **wulf** (wolf), **wylfen** (she-wolf). Cp. Ger. *Fuchs*, *Füchs-inn*. This change is brought about by the addition of the original vowel in the syllable **-en**. Cp. **gold** and **gilden**; **cock** and **chicken**.[1]

The suffix **-ster** exists in **spin-ster**. This is not strictly a feminine noun, because it does not correspond to a masculine **spinner**, but is merely restricted to an unmarried woman.

It originally meant a female spinner, as in the following passages:—

"Let the three housewifely *spinsters* of destiny rather curtail the thread of thy life." *The Gull's Hornbook.*

"And my wyf at Westmunstre that wollene cloth made,
Spak to the *spinsters* for to spinne hit softe."
Piers Plowman, A. Pass. v. 130.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries we find

[1] This change of the root-vowel (produced by assimilation of two vowels) is called, by German grammarians, *umlaut*.

sempster, songster, huckster, and **tapster** used as feminine substantives:—

"Wassel, like a neat **sempster**, and **songster** *her* page bearing a brown bowl." BEN JONSON.

"The tapper of Tavystocke and the **tapsters** potte."
JACK JUGGLER, p. 68, *Ed. Roxb. Club.*

"The **backster** of Baldockburye with *her* bakinge pele (*rod*)."
Ib.

In the oldest English feminine nouns ending in **-estre (-ster),** corresponded to masculines in **-ere (er).**

Masc.	Fem.
bæc-ere (baker).	bæc-estre.
hearp-ere (harper).	hearp-estre.
hopp-ere (dancer).	hopp-estre.
rêd-ere (reader).	rêd-estre.
sang-ere (singer).	sang-estre.
seâm-ere (sewer).	seâm-estre.
tæpp-ere (barman).	bæpp-estre.
webb-ere (weaver).	webb-estre.

In the fourteenth century the Norman-French suffix **-ess** began to replace the English **-ster,** though the older form lived on for some time side by side with its foreign substitute.

In Wicliffe we find *sleestere* and *sleeresse* (a woman slayer), *dwellstere* and *dwelleress* (female dweller), *singster* and *singeresse* (songster). The employment of **webster** and **songster** (Wicliffe), **huckster** (Trevisa), **shepster, backstere** and **brewstere** (Langland's "Piers Plowman"), **beggestere** (Chaucer), as masculine substantives shows us that even at this early period (Middle English) the force of the suffix was con-

siderably weakened, and its origin obscured by the frequent use of the new ending **-ess.**

In the seventeenth century the following hybrids (containing the English **-ster** and the Norman-French **-ess**) made their appearance; **song-str-ess, seam-str-ess, huck-str-ess, spin-str-ess** (Howell), **tap-str-ess** (T. Heywood).

The suffix **-ster** now merely marks the agent; as, **maltster**; often with more or less a sense of contempt or depreciation, as, **gamester, punster, trickster, youngster.**

A large number of words with this suffix, very common in the Elizabethan period, have gone out of common use: *drugster, hackster, lewdster, oldster, roadster*, &c.

84. In the oldest English **-a** marks the masculine, and **-e** the feminine gender.

Masc.	Fem.
ass-a (ass).	ass-e.
mag-a (kinsman).	mag-e.
nef-a (nephew).	nef-e.
rǽg-a, râha (hart).	rǽg-e.
webb-a (weaver).	webb-e.
wicc-a (sorcerer).	wice-e.
widuw-a (widower).	widuw-e.
han-a (cock).	hen (= henn-e).
gât, (goat).	gǽt-e.
wulf (wolf).	wylf (= wylf-e).
hlâford (lord).	hlafdig-e.

In the thirteenth century **-a** was weakened to **-e**, consequently there was no distinction in form between the masculine and feminine, hence words like **webbe** might mean a male or female weaver. (It is masculine in Chaucer, and feminine in "Piers Plowman.")

Witch was of the common gender up to a very late period.

"Your honour is a *witch*"

SIR WALTER SCOTT, *Fortunes of Nigel*, 2.

Wizzard has no connection with witch, but is the O.F. *guisc-art*, a wise man.

Widower is a new formation from the feminine *widow*; it occurs in "Piers Plowman" (B. ix. 174).

Neve (= nef-a) gave way in the thirteenth century to *nephew* (M.E. *nevew, nevu;* from O.F. *nevou*, Lat. *nepos*), but the old feminine nifte was kept up to a much later period.

85. *B.*—Romance Suffixes.

(1) **-ess** (Fr. *-esse* M. Lat. *-issa*). The Latin *-issa* makes its appearance before the Norman Conquest in **abbudisse**, abbess. Before the middle of the fourteenth century, the Norman-French **-ess** occurs only a few times as the ending of Romance words that had already found their way into the language. **Cuntesse** (countess) is found as early as 1140; **clergesse** occurs about 1210; **hostesse** and **emperesse** about 1278; **charmeresse** and **maystresse** (mistress) in 1340.

In the time of Wicliffe and Chaucer, this suffix established itself in the language as the ending of feminine nouns, being added to English as well as Romance roots.

Wicliffe has **-ess** for **-ster** in **dawnseresse, trendesse, neighboresse, techeresse, thralesse.** He uses **-ess** in many substantives that had no **-ess** in Norman-French, as **cosynesse, devouresse, prophetesse, servauntesse, spousesse.**

In the Elizabethan period the number of words in **-ess** was far greater than at present; this shows that the suffix is now restricted in its application. We no

longer retain **waggoness, rectress** (Chapman), **doctress** (Stanyhurst), **neatress** (Warner), **fosteress** (Ben Jonson), &c.

One form is now frequently used in both genders, as *singer, dancer, cousin, spouse*, &c.

In modern English, **-ess** is the ordinary suffix of the feminine, and it is added both to native and borrowed words, as **goddess, murderess, actress, baroness.**

a. The suffix **-ess** is added to the simple masculine as **baroness.**

b. The masculine ending is sometimes dropped before the **-ess**; as **sorceress** from **sorcerer.**

c. The masculine ending is shortened before the addition of **-ess**; as **actress** from **actor.**

Duchess is from O.F. *duc-esse, duch-esse.*

Marchioness is formed from M.L. *marchio.*

Mistress = O.F. and O.E. *maistresse* from *maister* = *master* and *mister.*

Lass is perhaps a contraction of *laddess.*

(2) **-ine** in **hero-ine**; and in **landgrav-ine** and **margrav-ine,** from the German **landgrave** and **margrave.**

(3) **-a** in **donn-a, infanta, sultana, signora.**

(4) Lat. **-trix** from Latin nouns in **-tor** occurs in some nouns taken directly from the Latin, as **adjutor, adjutrix, testator, testatrix.**

Empress was originally *emperice*, Fr. *imperatrice*, Lat. acc. *imperatricem.*

Nurse = M.E. *nurice, norise*, Fr. *nourrice*, Lat. acc. *nutricem.*

II. Gender denoted by Composition.

86. In the oldest English we find instances of a general term compounded with an attribute, as *mancild* = manchild; *carl-fugol* = a male fowl (bird); *cwenfugol*, a female bird; *wîfman*, woman; *wîf-freond*, a female friend.

In the fourteenth century we find *knave-child*, boy; *mayde-child*, girl (Trevisa); *men-syngers*, *wymmen-syngers*, *male-child*, *female*-bere, *she*-bere, *hee-geyte*, he-goat (Wicliffe).

In Modern English, we use

(1) **Male** and **female** as **male**-servant, **female**-servant; **male**-cat, **female**-bee.

(2) **Man**, **woman**, or **maid**, as **man**-servant, **woman**-servant, or **maid**-servant. Sometimes **man** is added to the feminine, and **woman** to the masculine to mark contempt; as **man**-milliner, **woman**-titan.

(3) **He** and **she** occur mostly in the names of animals, as **he**-goat, **she**-goat.

This last method was not employed in the oldest English, and did not come into use before the fourteenth century, and then only in the names of animals.

In the Elizabethan period **he** and **she** were used as nouns.

"The proudest *he*."—Shakespeare.

"These *shes* were nymphs of the chymney."
Fuller.

It is used as late as Dryden's time.

"Another *he*."—*Abs. and Achith.*

III. Different Words for the Masculine and Feminine.

87. The use of distinct words for the masculine and feminine, as *'ather*, *mother*, &c. does not belong to grammatical gender.

88. A few correlative terms, apparently distinct, are etymologically connected.

Masc.	Fem.
lad.	lass (= lad-ess).
lord.	lady (a final *e*, denoting the fem. has been lost).
nephew.	niece (Cp. Lat. nepos, neptis).
king.	queen (from the root *kin*; the primitive meaning of king = father; queen = mother).

89. The rule that the feminine is formed from the masculine is violated in the following words, in which the masculine is formed from the feminine:—

(1) **Bridegroom** (from **bride**) = the bride's man; groom = *goom*, O.E. *guma*, E.E. *gome*, a man. There was an E.E. *grom* = boy.

(2) **Widower** (from **widow**). *See* § 35, p. 19.

(3) **Gander** (from **gans**, the original form of **goose**).

In the O.E. *gandr-a* (= *ganr-a* = *gans-a*), the **a** is the sign of the masculine; **d** is merely a euphonic addition after **n**, and **r** represents a more original **s**.

(4) **Drake** is a compound from the root **end** (a duck), with an obsolete suffix **-rake**, signifying *king*. (Cp. the suffix **-rick** in *bishoprick*).

II.—NUMBER.

90. English, like most modern languages, has two numbers, **singular** and **plural.**

Some languages, as French, have only one mode of forming the plural. In English, we have various ways of denoting the plural, one only of which (the addition of **s** to the singular), is in common use.

In the oldest English there were several plural suffixes, **-as, -an, -a, -u (-o): stan-as** = stones, **steorr-an** = stars, **hand-a** = hands, **lim-u** = limbs. The most common of these was the suffix **-an.** After the Norman Conquest these were reduced (in the thirteenth century) to **-es, -en**; and finally the termination **-es** or **-s** became the ordinary sign of the plural.

The suffix **-as** was originally the plural sign of only *one* declension of masculine nouns, as **fisc** (fish), **smith**; pl., **fisc-as, smith-as.** It is now the only *living* suffix which is employed when we borrow new nouns and inflect them in the plural. All other plural endings are merely the relics of a former period in which they had a living power and were not irregular.

After the Norman Conquest the suffix **-as** became **-es** (later **-us, -ys, -is,**) and still remained for the most part a distinct syllable.

> " His *sonès* and his *doughtrës*, bothe I mene."
> OCCLEVE, *De Reg. Prin.* 620.

> " To heere *Godus wordus* thei han forborn."
> *O. E. Misc. p.* 226.

" Her *bodyus* wer lyke *dragonys*,
Hor *tayles* wer lyke *schorpyonys*,
They had *naylys* on her *knocus*,
That wer lyke ankyr *hokys*."
Tundal, 41 *ed.* 1843.

" His life
That vanisht into smoke and *cloudes* swift."
SPENSER, *Faerie Queene*, I. xi. 54.

In the fourteenth century, words of French origin were the first to thrust out the **e**, and adopt the simple suffix **-s** (or **-z**).

This loss of **e** brings the letter **-s** into immediate contact with the final letter of the singular, and causes the following phonetic modifications :—

a. If the singular noun ends in a **flat consonant**, a **liquid**, or a **vowel**, **-s** has the sound of **z**, as **tubs, lads, stags, hills, hens, feathers, days**, &c.

b. If the singular ends in a **sharp consonant**, **-s** is pronounced sharp, (as in *mouse*,) as **traps, pits, stacks**, &c. (For the reason of this see § 63, p. 45.)

As far as the spoken language is concerned, it would be more correct to say that the plural is formed by adding **s** or **z** to the singular.

The fuller form **-es** (pronounced **-ez**) for the plural, is obliged to be retained when the singular ends in a sibilant or palatal sound (**s, z, x, sh, ch, j**), as **gas-es, glass-es, wish-es, priz-es, fox-es, church-es, ag-es, judg-es.**

Nouns of pure English origin, whose singulars end in **-f, -fe**, preceded by a long vowel (except **oo**) or by **l**, change the **f** into **v**, and retain the older ending **-es**, as **leaf, leaves, wife, wives, wolf, wolves.**

This change of **f** to **v** is not known before the eleventi century. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we find it taking place in the *dative case* of nouns, *wif* (nom.), *wive* (dative), and

in the plural of adjectives *def* (sing.) *deve* (pl.) deaf. It seems that f between two vowels was pronounced as v. Cp. O.E. *heafod*, E.E. *heved*, M.E. *heed*, head, &c.

Pure English words in -ff, rf, and all borrowed words in -f, form their plurals in s, as cliffs, dwarfs, hoofs, briefs, proofs.

Nouns ending in y not preceded by a vowel retain the older spelling in the plural, as fly, flies, city, cities.

In M.E. the singular ended in *-ie*, or *ye*, as, flie, citie.

Y remains unchanged if it is preceded by another vowel, and the plural is regularly formed, as, boys, plays.

Remains of older Plural Formations.

91. Plural formed by Vowel Change. The chief changes are—

Sing.	Plural.
a.	e.
oo.	ee.
ou.	i.

Sing.	Plural.
man, O.E. man.	men, O.E. men.
foot, O.E. fôt.	feet, O.E. fêt.
goose, O.E. gôs.	geese, O.E. gês.
tooth, O.E. tôth.	teeth, O.E. têth.
mouse, O.E. mûs.	mice, O.E. mŷs.
louse, O.E. lûs.	lice, O.E. lŷs.
cow, O.E. cu.	ki(-ne), O.E. cŷ.

In these words the primitive suffix s has been lost together with a preceding vowel, which modified the root vowel. Thus the old pl. of *boc* (a book) was *bêc*, which stands for a more primitive *bocis*. This change of vowel was not limited to the plural, but took place in the dative of all these words, as, *boc* (nom.) *bêc* (dative).

Breeches, breeks, had for its oldest plural *brêc*, M.E. *breek*, formed by vowel change from *brôc*. *Byrig*,

fyrig, *tyrf*, were once the plurals of *borough* (O.E. *burh*), *furrow* (O.E. *furh*), *turf* (O.E. *turf*).

92. **Plurals in -en** (O.E. -an), as **ox, oxen. Hosen** (English Bible), **shoon** (Shakespeare), are more or less obsolete. Spenser has **eyen** (eyes), and **foen** (foes). In a work written about 1420 we find *been* (bees), *een* (eyes), *fleen* (flies), *pesen* (peas), *toon* (toes).

In the oldest English, plurals in -en were exceedingly common; in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries they became still more numerous because the older plurals in -a, -u, became first -e, and then -en.[1]

In the fourteenth century they became of less frequent occurrence, and in the northern dialects only *eyen*, *oxen*, and *hosen* were in common use.

Children, brethren, and **kine** did not originally form their plurals in -en (-n).

Children.—The oldest plural was **cild-r-u,** which became (i) **child-r-e** (and **childer**)[2]; (ii) **child-r-en** (and **childern**).

> "The *childer* are pretty *childer*."
> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, Act. I. Sc. 2.

In M.E. we find *calvr-en* (calves), *eyr-en* (eggs), and *lambr-en* (lambs): the last two are found as late as 1420.

> "Late *lamber*" = late lambs.
> PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p. 145, l. 154.

Brethren was (1) **brothr-u,** (2) **brothr-e, brethr-e (brether),** (3) **brothren, brethren.**

[1] For proof of this, see O.E. Hom. first series, pp. xxvii.—xxxii.; second series, p. xiv.; Ayenbite of Inwyt, pp. xi–xxv.

[2] The E.E. -re became M.E. -er. Cp. alre = aller, (of all).

The old *brether* is found very late. "These be my mother, *brether*, and sisters" (Bishop Pilkington, died 1575). *Brethers* occurs in the *Romance of Partenay*.

The *e* in brethren comes from the dative *brêther*.

In E.E. we find *dehtren*, in M.E. *dehter*, originally *dohtru*; the dative singular was *dêhter*.

Kine (M.E. **kin, ken**) is a double plural. See § 91, p. 72.

> "Fat and fair *ky*."
> *Cursor Mundi*, p. 259, l. 4566.

Kine has had a collective sense (like *pease* and T.E. *hose*), ever since the sixteenth century.

> "*Kine* or oxen."
> FITZHERBERT'S *Husbondrie*, A.D. 1598.

93. Some words, originally neuter, take no plural sign, as in the oldest English: **deer, sheep, swine, neat.**

These words have acquired a collective sense, cp. the use of *fish, fowl, fruit*, &c., *gross, fathom, foot*, &c.

94. Substantives having two Plural forms, with different meanings.

Brothers (by blood); **brethren** (of an order or community).

Cloths (sorts of cloth); **clothes** (garments, clothing).

Dies (a stamp for coining); **dice** (for gaming).

Pennies (a number of separate coins); **pence** (collective).

Pennies = O.E. *penegas*, (E.E., M.E. *pennyes, pans, pens*), without any distinction of meaning. *Pence*, compounded with a numeral as the name of a separate piece of money, is regarded

as singular and takes a plural, as, two *sixpences*. But this is a comparatively modern usage.

"A hundred pieces of *vi pence*."

The Book of Princes, p. 164.

The forms **pence, mice,** &c. show that the O.E. **s** had only the sharp sound in *mouse* and not the flat sound in *pens*.

Peas (taken individually, the plural of *pea*), **pease** (taken collectively).

Pease O.E. *pisa* (pl. *pesen*), is the correct form.

"*Pease* are an excellent seede."

FITZHERBERT'S *Husbondrie*, p. 15.

In M.E. we find the plurals *pesen* and *peses*. The **s** in *pease* belongs to the root (Cp. Lat. *pisum*) and is no sign of the plural, but this was lost sight of when **pea** was coined, making its plural **peas**.

"A red berry as big as a *pease*."

GERARDE'S *Herbal*, p. 53.

"Benes, *peses*."—PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p. 149, l. 8.

When two forms of a word occur, they must either get different meanings and so be utilised, or else one of them must drop out of use. Cp. *morrow* and *morning*, *latest* and *last*, &c.

95. False Plurals.

The **s** in **alms, riches, eaves,** is not a sign of the plural any more than it is in *largess*, *lachess*, &c. These words are however treated as plural, although singular in form.

Alms is a curtailed form of the O.E. *ælmesse*, pl. *ælmessen* (M.E. *almesse*, *almes*, T.E. *almous*; pl. *almessen*, *almesses*). Cp. *alms*-deed;

"Angels desire *an alms*.

MASSINGER, *The Virg. Mart.* iv. 3.

See Acts iii. 3.

Riches.—M.E. *richesse*, pl. *richesses*, O.F. *richesce*, Fr. *richesse*.

"Yet all the *riches* in the world that *is* riseth of the ground by God's sending."

. . . . . .

"Yet *is* not this *riches* of thy getting."

The Four Elements, in Old Eng. Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. 8.

Eaves = O.E. *yfes*, *efese*, margin, edge; (M.E. *eves*, *ovis*; pl. *eveses*); pl. *efesen* (cp. T.E. *esen-droppers*).

"Ysekeles in *eveses*."

Piers Plowman, B. p. 315.

96. Plural Forms treated as Singulars.

Some plural forms are frequently treated as singulars; as, **amends, bellows, gallows, means, news, odds, pains, shambles, tidings, wages, thanks, small-pox** (= small-*pock-s*; cp. *pock*-mark).

"A little *amends*."

Spectator; *Piers Plowman*, B. p. 338.

"A *gallows*."—*Esther*, v. 14.

"The *bellows blows*."

SHAKESPEARE, *Pericles*, I. 2.

"A *means*."—*Winter's Tale*, IV. 3.

"By this *means*;" "this *news*."

Measure for Measure, III. 2.

"A fearful *odds*."—*King Henry IV.*, Part III.

"That *tidings*."—*Julius Cæsar*, IV. 3.

"A *shambles*."—WHITLOCK, p. 97.

"A *thanks*."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, vol. I. p. 5.

"The small-*pocke*."—A. BOORDE.

The singulars *amend*, *gallow*, *mean*, *pain*, *tiding*, *wage*, *thank*, are found in older writers.

97. Nouns used only in the Plural.

(1) These are the names of things that consist of more than one part, or form a pair.

a. Parts of the body, and bodily ailments.—*Lights, lungs, intestines*, &c.; *measels, mumps, staggers, yellows* (the jaundice).

b. Articles of dress.—*Drawers, trowsers, breeches, mittens*, &c.

c. Tools, instruments, &c.—*Scissors, shears, tongs, scales*, &c.

(2) The names of things considered in the mass or aggregate.—*Ashes, embers, lees, molasses*, &c.

98. **Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural**; as, *beef, beeves; copper, coppers; spectacle, spectacles*, &c.

99. Foreign Plurals.

Foreign words, when naturalized, form their plural in the ordinary English way, as, *indexes, memorandums, automatons, focuses, beaus*, &c. Others, imperfectly naturalized, still retain their foreign plural.

	Sing.	Plural.
(1) Latin.	formula	formulæ
	datum	data
	radius	radii
	species	species
(2) Greek.	axis	axes
	phenomenon	phenomena
(3) Romance.	monsieur	messieurs
	bandit	banditti
(4) Hebrew.	cherub	cherubim
	seraph	seraphim

Some of these have two plurals with different meanings: as, *indexes* and *indices; geniuses* and *genii; cherubs* and *cherubim.*

Acoustics, analytics, ethics, optics, politics, were originally adjectives. We say *logic*, but *logics* is still used at the Irish Universities.

100. Plural of Compounds.

In compounds the plural is formed by **s**, as, *blackbirds, paymasters.* When the adjective (after the French idiom) is the last part of a compound, the sign of the plural is added to the noun, *attorneys-general, courts-martial, knights-errant,* &c. ; cp. the prepositional compounds, *sons-in-law, lookers-on.* In a few titles the last usually takes the plural sign, as *major-generals, lord-lieutenants.* A few others have both terms in the plural, *knights-templars, lords-justices, lords-appellants.*

We say *master-bakers* but Robert of Brunne has *masters mareschals.*

Compounds in **-full** were once strictly adjectival (cp. *baleful,* &c.), and took no plural.

> "Three *sponefull* of vinger."
> A. BOORDE.
> "A *potful* hony."
> PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie,* p. 95, l. 968.
> "Syx hondred *syppuol* knyȝtes."
> ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, l. 3523.
> "Thre *schipful* of knyȝtes."
> *Ib.* l. 2418.

III.—CASE.

101. The different forms which a noun (or pronoun) takes, to mark its relations to other words in a sentence, are called **Cases.**

The moveable or variable suffixes that express these relations are called *case-endings.*

Case means a *falling.* The nominative was considered by the old grammarians as the upright form, from which the other

forms were *fallings off*, or declinations (Cp. the term declension). The Romans applied the term *case* to the nominative (*casus rectus*); not so the Greeks, from whom the idea was borrowed.

The oldest English had six cases: **Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative,** and **Instrumental.**

In Modern English we have the subject-noun or *Nominative case*, the object-noun or *Objective case*, and the *Possessive case*. The *Nominative* and *Objective case* of nouns have the same form, and both are without case-endings. The *Objective* includes the *Accusative* or direct object of a transitive verb, and the impersonal object or *Dative case*, generally expressed by the noun with the preposition *to* or *for* before it. It is sometimes called the *Indirect object*.

The true Dative (of nouns and pronouns) is seen in such expressions as, *he bought* **his brother** a farm; *I made* **me** *great works; woe worth the* **day**; *woe is* **me**; **me**-*thinks*, **me**-*seems*, &c. The infinitive of *purpose* is a dative in "*Their feet make haste* **to shed** *blood*."

We have preserved the O.E. genitive **-s**, but all other endings have gone; **e** for the dative singular, and **um** for the plural have disappeared.

In the thirteenth century **a** final **e** represented both the singular and plural dative. The loss of this final **e** in the fourteenth century, left the dative and accusative undistinguished in form from the nominative.

Possessive Case.

102. The **Possessive case**, unlike the Nominative and Objective, is marked by a distinct form. Our possessive is the representative of the older genitive,

but we can see how much its force is weakened when we find as late as 1420 such expressions as *strengthes qualitee* (the quality of strength), *cannys knottes* (the knots of cane), *vynes rootes* (roots of vines).

In the oldest English there were various declensions, as in Greek and Latin, and different genitive suffixes for the singular and the plural.

The suffixes for the singular in the first period were **-es**, *smith-es* (smith's), **-an**, *steorr-an* (star's) **-e**, *rod-e* (rood's) **-a**, *sun-a* (son's).

For the plural they were **-a**, as, *smith-a*, *rod-a*, *sun-a*; **-ena**, as, *steorr-ena*.

In the thirteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the singular were **-es** and **-e**; in the plural **-ene** (-en), -e, and the modern form **-es** which often replaced the others.

In the fourteenth century **-es** (**-s**) is the ordinary suffix for singular and plural. The suffix **-en**, **-ene** (gen. pl.) is found as late as 1387; *wycchen* tonges (*Trevisa*, II. p. 187) = tongues of witches. See extract from *Trevisa* on p. 95.

103. The O.E. suffix **-es** was at first limited to the singular of certain masculine and neuter nouns, but was afterward extended to the feminine.

The expression *lady-day* is the last relic of the old mode of forming the genitive feminine. Fabyan (A.D. 1516) has *Mary Mawdelayne day*, (Chronicle, p. 488).

This ending **-es** (**-us**, **-ys**, **-is**) made a distinct syllable in the older stages of the language.

"And by the *popës* mediacioun."
CHAUCER, *Man of Lawes Tale*, l. 234.
"And cristendom of *prestës handës* fonge."
Ib. l. 377.
"The *nightës* char (car) the stars about doth bring."
LORD SURREY.
"Larger than the *moonës* sphere."
SHAKESPEARE, *Midsum. Night's Dream*, II. 1.

Formation of the Possessive Case.

104. The **Possessive case** (singular and plural) is formed in the written language by the suffix **-s**. In the *spoken* language it has the same phonetic modifications as the plural **-s**. (*See* § 90, p. 71, § 63, p. 45).

The apostrophe in the singular marks the elison of the **e** of the old **-es**.

The general use of the apostrophe in the singular is not found much before the end of the seventeenth century. It was probably employed to distinguish the possessive case from the plural number. Its use may have been established from a false theory of the origin of the suffix **-s**, which prevailed from Ben Jonson's to Addison's time, namely, that it was a contraction of *his*, hence such expressions as:—

"For Jesus Christ *his* sake."—*Prayer Book.*

"The emblem is *Camerarius his*" = (Camerarius's).

WHITLOCK, p. 52.

We find this corruption towards the close of the fourteenth century. Trevisa has "*egle hys nest*" = eagle's nest.

-is, another form of **-es** was sometimes written apart from its noun, and hence perhaps the confusion of **his** with **-is**, or **-es**.

In the thirteenth century we find **his** for **-is** (**-es**) intentionally used after proper names.

Nouns forming their plural by vowel change, or by the suffix *-n*, take the possessive sign after the plural; as, *men's*, *oxen's*, *children's*.

Nouns forming their plurals in **-s** were thought to be without the case-sign; hence in writing the possessive came to be marked by the apostrophe, as **boys'**.[1]

When a singular noun ends in an **s** sound, the possessive sign is dropped, and the apostrophe (often

[1] This came about in the seventeenth century, through the notion that the s in *boys'* was the sign of the plural number, and not of the possessive case.

omitted) marks its absence; as, for *justice'* sake, for *conscience'* sake, your *highness'* love, &c.

In foreign proper names (of two or more syllables) ending in **s**, the possessive is unchanged. Cp. *Moses'* law, *Thetis'* wrath, *Olympus'* top.

In common English names we generally sound an additional syllable; as *James's* (pronounced *Jâmz-ez*).

"*Peersses* bernes;" "*Peersses* wyf."

Piers Plowman, C. p. 148.

105. In compounds the possessive suffix is added to the last term, *the son-in-law's house, William-the-Conqueror's reign.*

Sometimes we find the principal substantive inflected as in the older stages.

"For his *grace's* sake the cardinal."—FORD.

"Constance the *Kynges* sister of France"

=The King of France's sister.—FABYAN.

"*Eadwardes kynges* leave"

=King Edward's leave.

"On *Williames* daye the yonger *Kynges*"

=On King William the younger's day.—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 145.

"*Sæberhtes* deâth east seaxna *cyninges*"

=The death of Sæberht, king of the East Saxons.—*Bed.* ii. 5.

The Case absolute.

106. In the oldest period the **dative** was the absolute case. About the middle of the fourteenth century the **nominative** began to replace it. Pecock (A.D. 1449) has a few instances of the *dative:* "**Him** *it* **witing** *and not* **weerning**," = *he knowing it and not forbidding it* (II. 325). Milton occasionally imitates the Latin construction, as "*him* destroyed." In the use of the passive participle we have introduced *being*, as, "this *being done*," which was in the sixteenth century, "this *done*."

107. Declension of the Old English Noun.

I.—Masculine and Neuter Nouns forming the Genitive in -es.

wulf, wolf; **scip**, ship; **word**, word.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Neuter.	
Nom. Voc.	wulf	scip	word
Gen.	wulf-es	scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulf-e	scip-e	word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip	word
Inst.	wulf-ê	scip-ê	word-ê

Plural.

Nom. Voc.	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Gen.	wulf-a	scip-a	word-a
Dat.	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um
Acc.	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Inst.	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um

II.—Feminine Nouns forming the Genitive in -e.

gifu, gift; **dæd**, deed.

Singular.

Nom. Voc.	gif-u	dæd
Gen.	gif-e	dæd-e
Dat.	gif-e	dæd-e
Acc.	gif-e	dæd (dæd-e)
Inst.	gif-ê	dæd-ê

Plural.

Nom. Voc.	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Gen.	gif-a (gif-ena)	dæd-a
Dat.	gif-um	dæd-um
Acc.	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Inst.	gif-um	dæd-um

III.—Stems in -n.

steorr-a, star; **tung-e**, tongue; **eâg-e**, eye.

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	steorr-a	tung-e	eâg-e
Gen.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Dat. Inst.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-e
Plural.			
Nom. Voc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Gen.	steorr-ena	tung-ena	eâg-ena
Dat. Inst.	steorr-um	tung-um	eâg-um
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an

IV.—Stems in -n.

brôthor, brother.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom. Acc. Voc.	brôthor	brôthr-ū, brôthor
Gen.	brôthor	brôthr-a
Dat. Inst.	brêthor	brothr-um

108. Declension of Nouns in the thirteenth century:—

I.—**wulf**, wolf; **scip**, ship; **word**, word.

	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom. Voc.	wulf	scip, schip	word
Gen.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulu-e (wulf-e)	scip-e (scip-en)	word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip	word

Plural.

Masc.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	wulu-es (wulf-es)
Gen.	wulu-e (wulu-en, wulu-ene)
Dat.	wulu-e (wulu-es, wulu-en)

Neut.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es) word, (word-es)
Gen.	scip-e (scip-ene, scip-es) word-e (word-es)
Dat.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es) word, (word-es)

II.—**Hand** (hond), hand; **dede**, deed.

Singular.

	Fem.	Fem.
Nom. Acc. Voc.	ded-e	hond, hand
Gen.	ded-e	hond-e
Dat.	ded-e	hond-e

Plural.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	ded-e (-en, -es)	hond-e (-en, -es)
Gen.	ded-e (-es)	hond-e (-es)
Dat.	ded-en (-e, -es)	hond-en (-e, -es)

III.—**Sterr-e**, star; **tunge**, tongue; **eȝe**, (eye).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	sterr-e	tung-e	eȝ-e
Gen.	sterr-e(-en,-es)	tung-e (-es)	eȝ-e (-es)
Dat.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eȝ-e (-en)
Acc.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eȝ-e

Plural.

Nom. Voc.	sterr-en(-e,-es.	tung-en (-e, -es)	eȝ-en (-es)
Gen.	sterr-ene	tung-ene	eȝ-ene
Dat.	sterr-en (-e)	tung-en (-e)	eȝ-en (-e)
Acc.	sterr-en(-e,-es)	tung-en (-e, -es)	eȝ-en (-es)

IV.—The words fæder (fader), brother, suster, moder, doȝter, (dohter), in the singular take no genitive inflexion. In the dative we find sometimes a final -e. In the plural we find nominatives in -es, -en, -e; as faderes, brotheres (brothers), dohtres, sostres; brotheren, brethren, dohtren, deht en, sustren, modren; brothre, dohtere, &c.

In the thirteenth century the genitive plural has sometimes the suffix -ene (-en), but more often -es.

The dative plural ends in -en, -e and sometimes in -es.

In the fourteenth century there is but little trace of the dative singular or plural.

The nominative plural of nouns ends in -es (-is, -ys, -us), without respect to gender, though many plurals in -en are found.

The genitive singular ends in -es (-is, -us, -ys).

Some feminines keep up the old genitive form in -e.

The genitive plural for the most part is like the nominative plural. We have still a trace of the old genitive plural -ene, (-en). See § 102, p. 80.

CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives.

109. The English adjective has lost all the older inflexions of *number*, *gender*, and *case*.

In Chaucer's time, and a little later, we find (1) a final e used to mark the plural, as, "the *smalë* fowles;" (2) a final e to denote the definite adjective, "the *yongë* sonne," "his *halfe* cours."

Cp. "And quhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe
Under the *suetë grenë* bewis bent,
Hir *fairë*, *freschë* face as quhite as any snawe
Sche turnyt has, and furth her wayis went."
JAMES I. OF SCOTLAND, *The Kingis Quhair*. *about* 1423.[1]

In the phrase "in the olden time," we have perhaps a trace of the definite declension.

The word ones does duty for an inflexional e in the plural, as M.E, "these tweyne *olde*" = these two old ones.

110. Adjectives used as substantives form their plural regularly, as *wantons*, *calms*, *shallows*. In the fourteenth century only Norman-French adjectives used substantively could be thus inflected, as, *viles*, *preciouses*; native words formed their plural by

[1] This is a Scottish imitation of Chaucer.

adding the final **e**, as *suete* (sweets), *soure* (sours). In the sixteenth century we find this new method extended to English words, as *yonges* = young ones (L. Andrewe, in *Babees Book*, p. 231).

When an adjective of Norman-French origin qualified a noun, it often formed its plural by adding **s**. Chaucer has *cosins germains* as well as *capitalles lettres* (Astrolabe, p. 16). Traces of this construction are found in Tudor English.

111. In **alderliefest** = dearest of all (Shakespeare, 2 *King Henry VI.* I. 1), we have one very late instance of the old genitive plural suffix **-er**. **Alder** = M.E. *aller*, E.E. *alre*, O.E. *al-ra*, the gen. pl. of **all**.

"Now Jesu Christ be your *alder* speed."
(*Everyman;* published early in the reign of Henry VIII. See old English Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. I. 135).

"Adam owre *aller* fader."
Piers Plowman, B. p. 298.

"Sweetest *alre* thinge."
O.E. Miscell. p. 166.

112. Declension of the O.E. Adjective.

STRONG OR INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind	blind	blind
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re	blind-es
Dat.	blind-um	blind-re	blind-um
Acc.	blind-ne	blind-e	blind
Inst.	blind-ē	blind-re	blind-ē

Plural.

Nom. Voc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u
Gen.	blind-ra	blind-ra	blind-ra
Dat.	blind-um	blind-um	blind-um
Acc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u

WEAK OR DEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind-a	blind-e	blind-e
Gen. Dat.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-an
Acc.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-e

Plural.

	Masc., Fem., Neut.,
Nom. Voc. Acc.	blind-an
Gen.	blind-ena
Dat.	blind-um

113. In the thirteenth century we find the following forms of the strong declension.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind	blind-**e**	blind
Gen.	blind-**es**	blind-re (-e)	blind-**es**
Dat.	blind-e (-en)	blind-re (-e)	blind-**e**
Acc.	blind-ne (-e)	blind-**e**	blind

Plural for all genders :—

Nom. Voc.	blind-**e**
Gen.	blind-**ere** (-re, -e)
Dat.	blind-**en** (-e)
Acc.	blind-**e**

The strong declension has for the most part all its cases in -e, sometimes its oblique cases in -en ; and throughout the plural -e (or -en).

Sometimes the definite form takes the inflexions of the indefinite declension.

In the fourteenth century we find a final e used to mark (1) the plural, and (2) the definite form and vocative case of the adjective. (See § 109, p. 87).

Comparison of Adjectives.

114. **Comparison** is that change of form which the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity or quality. Adverbs that have sprung from adjectives may be compared.

There are three **degrees of comparison,** the **positive** or simple form of the adjective, the **comparative** formed by adding **-er** to the positive, the **superlative** by adding **-est** to the positive.

This rule applies (1) to all words of one syllable, (2) to some words of two syllables, especially those with the accent on the last syllable.

Orthographical changes:—

(1) When the positive ends in **-e**, the comparison is formed by **-r** and **-st**. (2) Final **y** following a consonant is changed to **i** (*happy, happier, happiest*). (3) A final consonant after a short vowel is doubled, as, *wet, wetter, wettest; cruel, crueller, cruellest; cheerful, cheerfuller, cheerfullest.*

Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables are compared by **more and most.**

The words *more* and *most* are pure English words, but the use of them to express comparison is due to Norman-French influence. This mode of comparison came into use towards the end of the thirteenth century, and was frequently employed by the writers of the fourteenth century.

But even at this time, adjectives of any number of syllables might be compared by **-er** and **-est**. The writers of the Elizabethan period paid very little regard to the length of the adjective.

"The *delectablest* lusty sight and *movingest* object me thought it was."—NASH'S *Lenten Stuff*, p. 9, ed. 1871.

115. **Double comparisons** are not uncommon in Middle and Modern English. Some of these double forms arose out of an attempt to strengthen the comparison, as *more kinder, most straitest.* Others arose through the comparative degree of some irregular forms being mistaken for the positive.

"The *lesser* lights."—*Gen.* i. 16.

"*More better.*"—*Temp.* i. 2.

"The *worser* of the twain."—WARNER.

"*Lesse* gifts and *lesser* gaines I weigh them not."

HALL'S *Satyres*, Book II. 2.

Some numerals, pronominal words, prepositions, &c., have a comparative suffix, **-ther (-ter)**, as **o-ther, whe-ther, af-ter, un-der.**

Traces of an old superlative **m** are to be found in **form-er** and **for-m-ost.** (See § 117, p. 96.)

116. Irregular Comparisons.

I. With Vowel Change in the Comparative and Superlative.

Old, elder, eldest (O.E. *eald, ald; yldra, eldra; yldest, eldest*).

Elder and **eldest** are archaic, and are replaced by the more recent forms, **older** and **oldest.**

Cp. O.E. *lang, lengra, lengest; strang, strengra, strengest.* This change is caused by the original vowel before the suffix **-s** and **-st.**

Nigh, nigher, nighest, (next).

Near, nearer, nearest.

O.E. *neâh, neh; nyra, nearra; neâhst, nêhst.*

M.E. *negh, nigh; nerre, nere, nerrer; neghest, neyest, next, nest.*

The true representatives of the O.E. forms are *nigh, near,* (*nigher*), *next.*

Near is a comparative form, **nearer** is a double comparative.

"The Knyȝt asked leeve to ryde by an other way that was *nere* (= nearer)."—*Gest. Rom.*, p. 34.

"You're early up, pray God it be the *near.*"

GREEN'S *Friar Bacon.* See *Macbeth* II., 4.

Next is a contracted form: $h + s = k + s = x$. Cp. M E. *hext = highest; coxcomb = cock's comb.*

Late, latter, last.

Late, later, latest.

O.E. *læt* (late), *lator, latost, lætemest.* In the thirteenth century we find *late, lattre, lattst* (*latst*).

The distinction between **latter** and **later, latest** and **last,** is quite a modern one.

> " The sea gravel is *lattest* for to drie,
> And *lattest* may thou therwith edifie."
> 1420 PALLADIUS, p. 14, ll. 363–4.

Last arises by assimilation out of *lat-st.* Cp. *best* = O.E. *bet-st; gospel* = *godspel.*

(Rathe,) rather, (rathest).

O.E. *hræth, hræthra* (*hrethra*), *hræthost.*

Rathe in Milton means *early*, as,

> " The *rathe* primrose."—*Lycidas.*
> " The *rather* born lambs."—SPENSER.
> " Late and *rathe.*"—*Piers Plowman* B. p. 132.
> " The *rather* (previous) day."—*Trevisa* III. p. 145.
> " The *rathest* riping grapes."—PALLADIUS, p. 66.

II. FROM OBSOLETE ROOTS.

Good, better, best.

O.E. *gôd, betera,* (*betra,*) *betest, betst.*

The positive of *better* is **bat** = *good*, which root is found in O.E. *betan*, 'to make good,' 'amend;' and *boot*, in 'to boot.'

For vowel change in **better** see **elder**; for **best** see **last.**

Bad
Evil } **worse, worst.**
Ill

O.E. *yfel, wyrsa, wyrrest, wyrst.*

Wor-se, wor-st, are formed from the root *weor*, bad.

The **-se** = **-re** (**-er**). Cp. **less**, O.E. *læs-se.*

In the phrase "the weaker had the *wer*" (Harding), we have the remnant of the Danish *værre.* Spenser uses *wr* = worse.

"Was neuer *warre* o moder born."
Cursor Mundi, p. 68, C.
"Was neuer *worre* of moder borne."—*Ib.* F.

Little, less, least.

O.E. *lytel, læssa, læsest, læst.*

The root of *less* and *least* is not the lit of 'little,' but las, 'infirm.' Cp. Goth. *lasiws*, 'weak.' The vowel-change is like that in *better.*

Much, more, most.

O.E. *micel, mâra, mæst.*

Much is from *mycel*, through the forms *michel, muchel, mochel.*

Mo-re contains the root *mah*, or *magh*, to be great. Cp. *mai-n*, O.E. *mæg-en.*

O.E. *micel*, M.E. *muchel, muche, moche* = great, large.

"He seide it was not half *mech* inow."—CAPGRAVE.
"A *much* berd" = a great beard.
Sir G. and the G. Knight p. 1.

Mo (*moe*), a shortened form of *more*, is used by Elizabethan writers for *more.* Gill makes *mo* the comparative of *many; more* the comparative of *much.* The Lowland Scotch has a similar distinction.

III. FROM ADVERBIAL ROOTS OF TIME AND PLACE.

Far, farther, farthest.

O.E. *feor, fyrra, fyrrest;* M.E. *fer, ferre,* (*ferrer,*) *ferrest.*

Farther. The correct comparative is farrer = M. E. ferrer.

"þan mon (must) he gyf light
Als *fer* als þe some dose and *ferrer.*"
HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

Far (M.E. *ferre*) = 'farther,' occurs in *Winter's Tale*, iv. 4.

The **th** in **farther** has crept in from false analogy with **further**, M.E. *forther*, *ferther*.

Furth-er (O.E. *furthor*, superlative *furthmest*), is the comparative of **forth**.

"He went him *forth* and *forther* soght."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4107.

"He went *forth* and *further* soȝt."—*Ib.* T.

"He went *forth* and *ferder* soght."—*Ib.* G.

E-re, erst. The root of **e-re** is the adverb *â*, 'ever.'

In O.E. we find *se ærra* = the former, *se æftera* (the after) = the latter.

In the thirteenth century we find *erure*, *erore* = former. O.E. *Misc.*, p. 173.

Af-ter, latter, second (compare *after*-thought), is from *af* = *of*, *off*.

Fir-st is the superlative of **fore**. See § 117, p. 96.

For change of vowel see § 83, p. 63; § 91, p. 72.

Hind-er, from **hind**, as in *behind*. *Hinderest* occurs in Chaucer.

Inn-er, from **in**. In the thirteenth century we find *innerest*.

Neth-er, from **neath** in *beneath*. *Nethereste* is used by Chaucer (*Astrolabe*, p. 4).

Ov-er is from the root **ove** (O.E. **ufe** = up), in *above*. Wickliffe has *overere* (a double comparative).

As late as the seventeenth century *over* and *upper* are opposed to *nether*.

"The *upper* part . . . shutteth close upon the *nether*."—HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 241.

"Also as it is in the parties of the grete worlde that they beeth so i-ordeyned and isette, that the *over-meste* of the *nether* kynde touche the *nether-meste* of the *over* kynde, as oistres and schellefisch . . . in bestene kind."—*Trevisa* II., p. 181.

Upp-er, from **up**. *Upperest* and *overest* are found in the fourteenth century.

Utt-er, out-er, from **out** (O.E. *ut*).

117. **Superlatives in m.**

The O.E. **for-ma** (cp. Lat. *pri-mu-s*) = 'first,' from the root **fore**, survives in **for-m-er** (comparative form with superlative sense), and **for-m-ost.**

"The *forme* yere."—PALLADIUS, p. 71, l. 291.
"The *formast* barn that sco him bare."—*C. Mundi*, C. p. 68.
"The *first* child that ever scho bare."—*Ib.* G.
"Of alle oure *former* fadris that evere were or aren."—*Babees Book*, p. 47.

The suffix **-most** (O.E. *m-est*), contains the superlative endings **-m** and **-est**, as in **in-m-ost, ut-m-ost, up-m-ost, hind-m-ost**, &c.

Further-more (*forther-over* in Chaucer), is simply a compound like *ever-more.*

For the **Indefinite Article** see Numerals, **One.**
For the **Definite Article** see Demonstrative Pronouns.

NUMERALS.

118. **Numerals** may be considered under the three following divisions, **Cardinal, Ordinal,** and **Indefinite** Numerals.

I.—Cardinals.

One = O.E. *an*, M.E. *an, a, on, oon, o, oo.*

The Indefinite Article **an** preserves the original form of the numeral. The **n** falls off before a con-

sonant, and becomes **a**. (Cp. "*mine* and *my*.") **A** = *one* in "all of *a* size," &c.

> "Alle salle thai be *ane* in company,
> And als *a* saule and *a* body."
> HAMPOLE'S *P. of C.*, p. 228.

An in seventeenth century writers is used before words beginning with h.

> "Yea, I may say of Gardiner, that he had *an* head, if not *an* hand, in the death of every eminent Protestant."—FULLER, *Church History*, ed. 1845, iv. p. 183.

In the phrase "such *an* one," one must have had its M.E. pronunciation oon.

None and **No** are the negatives of **an** and **a**.

Two, twain (O.E. *twâ, twegen*).

Three (O.E. *thrê, thrêo*).

The root is thri or thar, 'to go beyond,' 'cross.' Cp. Lat. *tres* and *trans*.

Four (O.E. *feôwer, fether;* cp. Lat. *quatuor*) has lost a **th**.

Five (O.E. *fîf*), has lost a nasal. Cp. Lat. *quinque*, Gr. πεντε.

Nine (O.E. *nigon*, M.E. *neghen*).

A *g* representing an older *v* has been lost. Cp. Lat. *novem*.

Ten (O.E. *tŷn, tên*).

Ten has lost an *h* or *g*. Cp. Gothic *taihun*, Lat. *decem*. The original form therefore was *tehen*, or *tegen*. Cp. **twenty** (O.E. *twen-tig*).

Eleven [O.E. *endlif* (*endleof*), *ællejne* (*ændlefene*)].

e = **en** = one; **lev** = **lif** (perhaps) = ten.

Twelve (O.E. *twelf*).

twe = **twa** = two; **lve** = **lif** = **ten**.

Sometimes l = t, and f = g, hence lif = tig, (in O.E. *twentig* = *twen*-ty.)

Some philologists say that lif is from O.E. *læfan*, Goth. *laibjan*, to leave; O.E. *lâf*, Goth. *laiba*, a remnant. Hence *eleven* = *one over* ten; *twelve* = *two over* ten.

The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by the suffix **-teen** (O.E. *tŷne*) = ten. Those from 20 to 90 are formed by suffixing **ty** (O.E. *tig*) = ten.

Hund-red. In O.E. we find *hund*, and *hund-teôntig* = 100. **Hund** signified *ten* originally.

Hundred and **thousand** are substantives (originally neuter).

119. **Distributives** express how many at a time, as, **one by one, one and one, by twos, two each,** &c.

By twos. In O.E. the dative *bî twâm* would be used.

In the fourteenth century we find *be hundredes* &c. Chaucer. *Astrolabe*, pp. 11, 19, has *by on, by two*, &c. *By* and *by* = one by one; *on by on* is used by Lydgate.

120. In **Multiplicatives** the cardinal number is placed before the greater numeral, as eight hundred.

They may be expressed (1) by the English suffix **-fold**, as **two-fold.** Cp. O.E. *an-fald* = simple; (2) by the Romance suffix **-ple (-ble), double** (*duple*), **treble** (*triple*).

In M.E. we find **-double** used as a suffix instead of **-fold.**

(3) by the word **times**, as "three **times** one are three;" (4) by the adverbial form, as, "**twice** two," "**thrice** four."

Both O.E. *begen* (masc.), *ba* (neut.). Cp. O.E. *twêgen*, two.

In the thirteenth century we find the neuter form (*bey, ba, bo, boo*) more common than the masculine *beyn*.

Both contains the root **bo** (or *ba*), and the suffix **-th.**

In O.E. we find **ba** joined to *twa* (two), as *bâtwâ, butwa, butu.* Cp. our "**both two.**"

In the thirteenth century we find a plural *bathen*, or *bothen*, and a genitive plural *bei-re;* and in the fourteenth century *bother* and *bothers* are used as genitives.

II. Ordinals.

121. The **Ordinals**, except **first** and **second**, are formed from the cardinal numbers by the suffix **-th**, as **four-th, fif-th, six-th**, &c.

In O.E. fifth, sixth, and twelfth, were *fifta, sixta*, and *twelfta* In O.E. th had, probably, only the *flat* sound in *bath*, and therefore could not follow a sharp mute.

Third = O.E. *thridda*, M.E. *thridde.*

In seventh, ninth, tenth, thirteenth, . . . nineteenth, an n has crept in through Northern forms of Norse origin. Cp. tithe = tenth.

In eigh-th (O.E. *eaht-otha*), a t has disappeared.

First is the superlative of **fore**, see § 116, p. 95.

Second, Fr. *seconde*, Lat. *secundus*, has replaced the O.E. **other.**

O.E. other = one of two; thæt ân = the first; thæt other = the second. In M.E. these became (1) that oon and that other, (2) the ton (toon, tone), and the tother.

"Tua pilers thai mad, o tile *the tan*,
The tother it was o merbul stan."
C. Mundi, C. p. 96, ll. 1532-3.

"Two pileres thei made, of til *that oon*,
That other was of marbul stoon."
Ib. T.

III. Indefinite Numerals.

122. **All.** O.E. *eal*, *eall*; Genitive plural *al-ra*, E.E. *al-re*, M.E. *aller*, *alder*, *alther*. See § 111, p. 88.

In the Lowland Scotch dialects we find *allers*, cp. *bothers*, § 120, p. 99.

Many. O.E. *manig*, *maneg*, is another form of the root *magh* in *more*. See § 116, p. 94.

In O.E. we have *fela*, *feola* (M.E. *fele*) = many.

Many (O.E. *mænigeo*), a crowd, is a substantive in *some* expressions, as, "a great *many*."

> "O thou fond *many*."
> SHAKESPEARE, 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 3.

Few. O.E. *feâwa*, *feâ*; E.E. and M.E. *fa*, *fo*, *fon*, *fone*, *feawe*, *few*; O.E. *lyt* = few.

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns.

123. The **Pronouns** are among the oldest parts of speech, and consequently have undergone much change, so that their original forms are greatly altered. Notwithstanding all this they have preserved more relics of the older inflexions than any other part of speech, as case-endings in **hi-m, he-r, ou-r,** &c.; suffixes marking gender in **it, what,** &c. They also illustrate the substitution of one demonstrative for another, see remarks on **she, they,** &c. p. 109. They show how neuter forms may take the place of the masculine and feminine, as in **this,** &c.; how one case may replace another, as in **you** for **ye**; how the singular may take the place of the plural, as in **you** for **thou**; how relative pronouns are lost and replaced by interrogatives; how new plurals replace older ones in **others, selves**; how impersonal pronouns are formed, as, **somebody,** &c.

124. When a pronoun stands alone, as the subject or object of a verb, it is said to be used substantively; when it modifies a noun it is said to be used adjectively. The Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite Pronouns have often this double use.

125. The classes of Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Demonstrative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Relative, (5) Indefinite.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I. Substantive.

126. The **Personal Pronouns** have no distinction of gender. There are two persons, the person who speaks, called the *first* person; the person spoken to, the *second* person.

The person or thing spoken of is sometimes called the *third* person (he, she, it). It is properly a demonstrative pronoun and is inflected like other old demonstratives for gender, as well as for number and case.

He = that man, she = that woman, it = that thing.

In E. E. the definite article or demonstrative the is used instead of he before *that:* "mihti Lauerd is *the* that Juliane on leveth" = mighty Lord is *he* that Juliana believes in.—(*Jul.* p. 65). "Ich am *the* that spec" = I am *he* that spake.—(*Ib.*)

127. THE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. I	I, ich, ik	Ic, ich, Ih	Ic
Gen.		min	mîn
Dat. me	me	me	me
Acc. me	me	me	mec, me

Plural.

Nom. we	we	we	we
Gen.		ure	ûser, ûre
Dat. us	us, ous	us	ûs
Acc. us	us, ous	us	ûsic, ûs

128. THE PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. thou	thu, thou	thu	thu
Gen.		thin	thín
Dat. thee	the	the	the
Acc. thee	the	the	thec, the

Plural.

Nom. ye, you	ȝe, yhe, ye	ȝe	ge
Gen.		eoure, ewr, ȝure	eower
Dat. you	ȝou, yhou, you, yow	eow, ew, eu	eow
Acc. you	ȝou, yhou, &c.	ew, ow, ȝuw	eowic, eow

There was a dual of the first and second personal pronouns in O.E., which died out before A.D. 1300.

129. Remarks on the pronouns of the first and second person :—

(1) **I.** The guttural has fallen off, as in many words originally ending in **c** or **ch**. See § 37, p. 64.

Traces of an older form **Ich**, (which still lives on in the south-west of England), occur in old dramatic writers, as, *chill* = ich will (Shakespeare, *King Lear*). In early English we find *icham*, I am ; *ichabbe*, I have ; *nullich*, I will not ; *nefdich*, I had not.

" *Icham*, a gentylman of much noble kynne,
Though *Iche* be clad in a knauës skynne."
HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*

" *Ich* am an old man."
A.D. 1565, AWDELEY, *The Fraternity of Vacabondes*, p. 8.

(2) **Me** (dative) is still in use before impersonal verbs, **me**-thinks, **me**-seems, &c. ; after interjections,

"woe is me," "well is him;" to express the indirect object, *to me* or *for me;*

"Tell *me* the truth," "he plucked *me* ope his doublet."—SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Cæsar*, I. 2.

In M.E. we find more frequent traces of the dative, especially with the adjectives *leof* (*lief*), *loth*, &c. and the verb *to be.*

"And lever *me* is be pore and trewe."
C. Mundi, T. l. 4375.

Traces of this idiom occur in the dramatic writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

The verb *had* often replaces the older *were* (subjunctive).

"*Me* had rather."—*Rich.* II. iii. 3.
= M.E. *Me* were lever.
"*You* were best take my coxcomb."
King Lear, I. iv.
"*You* had best."—*Ib.* II. p. 208.
"*Him* had ben lever to be syke."
FABYAN, p. 270.
"*You* were best hang yourself."
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 305.

In the sixteenth century the *nominative* case replaces the *dative*, as, "thou wert better," &c. for "thee were better;" "we had best," = "us were best." Bacon uses "I think good," for "me thinks good."

"Better *I were* distract."
King Lear, iv. 7.

We no longer use *mine, thine, ours*, &c. as genitives, but only as possessive pronouns. In M.E. we find a trace of the genitive in such expressions as, "maugre *myn*" (*owres* &c.) = in spite of *me;* (*us*, &c.) "*oure* aller" = all of *us*, &c.

See ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, § 133.

(3) **Thou** has been replaced by *you*, except in the poetical and religious language.

From the fourteenth down to the seventeenth century, we find *thou* used to express (1) *familiarity* towards friends; (2) *superiority* towards inferiors; (3) *contempt* or *anger* towards strangers.

"We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper, as a sign of command; from equals to equals is passable as a note of familiarity; but from inferiors to superiors, if proceeding from ignorance, hath a smack of clownishness; if from affectation, a tone of contempt."—FULLER.

(4) **Ye**, although the true nominative, has been replaced by dative or objective *you*. In the English Bible, the older use of *ye* as nominative, and *you* as dative or objective, is always carefully observed.

"*Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you*."
John xv. 16.

In Sackville, Shakspeare, and Milton, we find *ye* (in an unaccented position) sometimes used instead of *you*, in the objective case.[1]

"Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate *ye*."
SHAKESPEARE, *Henry VIII.* iii. 2, 365.
"His wrath, which one day will destroy *ye* both."
MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, ii. 734.

130. THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.—SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. he	he, ha, a	he, ha	he
Gen.	his	his	his
Dat. him	him	him	him
Acc. him	him, (hine)	hine, him	hine

[1] *You* does not appear as a nominative, in the written language before the sixteenth century. In the spoken language it was perhaps probably pronounced like *ye*, or the *yea* in *yearn*. Cp. *thank ee* = thank ye = thank you; *look ee* = look ye.

Feminine.

Modern English.	M.E.	S. E.	O. E.
Nom. she	heo, sco	hi, heo, scæ	heo
Gen.	sche, she	hire, here	hire
Dat. her	hire, hir, here	hire, here	hire
Acc. her	hire (hi, heo)	hi, heo, hire (hise, his)	hi

Neuter.

Nom. it	hit (it)	hit (it)	hit
Gen.	his (hit)	his	his
Dat. it	him (hit, it)	him	him
Acc. it	hit (it)	hit	hit

PLURAL.

Nom. they	hii, thei, thai	hi, heo, thei, thai	hi (hig)
Gen.	heore, here, her, thair, their	hire, heore, here, theȝre	hira (heora)
Dat. them	hem, hom, theim, thaim, tham	heom, hem, ham, theȝm	him (heom)
Acc. them	hem, theim, tham	hi, heo, heom, hem, theȝm (hise, his)	hi (hig)

131. Observations on the Pronoun of the Third Person :—

(1) In Old English there was only one stem, **hi**, from which **he**, **she**, **it**, and their cases were formed. The modern declension contains three stems, **hi**, **sa**, **tha**.

(2) **He.** In Middle English we find *ha* and *a* = he. Cp. "quoth *a*."

"'Rah, tah, tah,' would *a* say; 'bounce,' would *a* say; and away again would *a* go; and again would *a* come." —*Hen. IV.* PART II. iii. 2. 303.

(3) **Hi-m** (*dat.*) contains a real dative suffix **m**. Cp. *who-m.*

(4) **Hi-m** (*acc.*). The old accusative was **hi-ne**, which began to go out of use in the thirteenth century, and by Chaucer's time had wholly disappeared in the Midland dialect.

"Heo *hine* bitauhte knyhtes þat duden *him* muchele schonde;
þe knyhtes þet *hine* ledden bitauhten *him* þe rode."
= They delivered him to knights that did to him great shame;
The knights that led him delivered to him the cross.
O.E. Miscell. p. 49.

(5) **She** replaces the older **heo**, which lasted as late as 1387. It is an altered form of the Old English feminine definite article *seo*, or *sio* (Icelandic *sú*).

"*Heo* nuste hwat *heo* mende, *heo* wes of wytte poure."
= She knew not what she meant, she was of wit poor.
O.E. Miscell. p. 85.

(6) **He-r** (*dat.*) contains a dative (fem.) suffix **-r**, (**-re**).

He-r, (*acc.*) originally dative, has replaced the old accusative *hi* or *heo.*

"Heo cuþeþ *hi* well sone."
= She will show herself very soon.
O.E. Miscell. p. 118.
"He ber *heo* on his schuldre."
= He bore her on his shoulder.
Ib. p. 49.

(7) **It** has lost an initial *h.* The final **t** was originally a suffix of the neuter gender, as in *tha-t, wha-t.* Cp. Latin *i-d, illu-d, istu-d, quo-d.*

It is often employed in O.E. where we use **there.**

"It es na tung may tell."
C. Mundi, p. 84.
"It *ben* the deueles disoures."
Piers Plowman, B. vi. 56.

(8) **It** (*dat.*) has replaced the true form **him.**

(9) **They** is the old nominative plural of the definite article. It replaced the older form *hi* or *heo* in the beginning of the thirteenth century in the dialects of the North and North East of England, under the forms *þei*, *þess*, *þai*.

"Ic nele neuer þe vorsake, and so *hi* seyden alle.
þo *hi* hedden al þis iherd *heo* were ful sori."
= I will never forsake thee, and so they said all;
When they had heard all this they were full sorry.
O.E. Miscell. p. 41.

(10) **The-m** (*dat.*) is the dative plural of the old definite article and replaces the demonstrative **hem.**

The-m (*acc.*) was originally a dative and replaced the older forms *hi*, *heo*, *hem*; the true accusative is *they*, O.E. *þâ*.

"So ha sente *hi* into his wynyarde."
= So he sent them into his vineyard.
O.E. Miscell. p. 33.
"And [he wule] makie *heo* unfere."
= And he will make them unbold.
Ib. p. 75.

"And right anoon *thay* token *here* way to the court of Melibe, and token with *hem* some of *here* trewe frendes."—CHAUCER, ed. Morris, iii. p. 193.

In the dramatists, *'em* is not a corruption of *them*, but of the older *hem.*

(11) The following table shows the origin of *she*, *they*, &c. :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE.—SINGULAR.

Nom.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	se (E.E. the)[1]	seo, sio	thæt
	|	|	|
	the	she	that

PLURAL.

Nom.	Poss.	Dat.	Acc.
thâ	thâra	thâm	thâ
|	|	|	|
they	their	them	

Obs. The following examples show the demonstrative character of *they* = those (nom. and acc.).

"For *they* carles garre syke a dinne."
WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 118.
"And *tha* bandes of fyre salle never slake."
= And those bonds of fire shall never slack.
HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7177.
"But *thai* prophetis so thyn ar sawin."
= But those prophets are so thinly sown.
BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, iv. 685.
"For he had drede of *thai* thre men."
= For he had dread of those three men.
Ib. vii. 185.
"*Thai* thre tratouris he has slane."
= Those three traitors has he slain.
Ib. vii. 222

[1] In O.E. *the* was only used as an indeclinable relative. In E.E. *the* (masc.) and *theo* (fem.) were used as demonstrative pronouns instead of O.E. *se* and *seo*.

"Ane of *thai* That com for to sla the kyng."
=One of those that came to slay the king.
BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, vii. 212.

Tho is another form of *tha* and *thei*.

"*Þo* weore *Þeos*—
Þat weoren in *Þe* pynen of helle."
=They were those
That were in the pains of hell.
O. E. Miscell. p. 232.

"Yf ye wille after this do to me so
As ye have done, ye shalle have alle *tho*." (*them*=coins)
OCCLEVE, *De Reg.* 166.

"And *tho* that cannot (beat their husbands), they will never let
Their tongues cease.". . . . . .
HAWES, *P. of Pl.* p. 136.

II. Reflexive Pronouns.

132. The simple personal pronouns **me, thee,** &c. may be used reflexively, as, "I repent **me**," "get **thee** hence," "sit **you** down."

The word **self** is usually added to them.

Singular.—**Myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, itself.**

Plural.—**Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.**

Self (O.E. **silf**), was at first declined as an adjective along with the personal pronouns; nom. *ic silfa*, gen. *mîn silfes;* dat. *me silfum;* acc. *me silfne.*

Between the nominative of the personal pronoun and the word **silf**, the dative case of the pronoun was inserted, as: *ic me silf* = I myself; *thu the silf* = thou thyself; *he him silf* = he himself; *we us silfe* = we ourselves; *ye ēow silfe* = you yourselves;

hi him selfe = they themselves. So we could say *God silf* and *God him silf.*

These forms are emphatic rather than reflexive.

In the thirteenth century we find the *possessive* pronoun replacing the *dative*, as, *I mi self, thu thi self*, &c. instead of *I me self, thu the self.* Cp. himself, themselves, itself, oneself.

Probably **self** had already come to be considered a noun; it certainly was often so treated from the fourteenth century downwards:—

> "As *thi self* likyth."
> CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, pt. I. sec. 21.
>
> "*Myself* hath been the whip."
> CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5757.
>
> "Thy manner is to muse and [to] devyse,
> So that sometime *myself* may carry me
> *Myself* knoweth not where; and I assure ye
> So hath *myself* done now."
> HEYWOOD, *The Play of the Wether.*

Cp. the use of "*myself*," &c. for "I myself," &c.

When **self** was fully established as a noun, it dropped its old plural **e**, and took **s**, as *ourselves*, &c.

For some time it was without a plural, as *ourself, themself*, &c.

One's self, (or more properly **oneself**), is quite a modern form. In Elizabethan English we find *a man's self* = *one's self.*

In O.E., **ana** (the nom. of *án*, one,) was used like **self**. In M.E., we find **one** used for *self* with the possessive pronoun, as, "be myne *one*," by myself (*Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, p. 125) = "by me *one*."

An old meaning of **self** was *same.* Cp. "the *self* truth" (Becon), and "**self-same.**"

> "The *same self* time."
> BALE'S *Works*, Park. Soc. p. 23.

> "For other ruffians, as their fancies wrought,
> With *self-same* hand, *self* reasons, and *self* right,
> Would shark on you."
> SIR T. MORE, *ed.* Shak. Soc. p. 27.

III. Adjective Pronouns.

133. The **Adjective** Pronouns, sometimes called **Possessive** Pronouns, were formed from the genitive case of the personal pronouns, and were declined like ordinary adjectives.

In modern English the possessive pronouns, though only used adjectively, are identical in form with the old genitives of the personal pronouns.

Sing.—**Mine, my; thine, thy; his, hers, its.**

Plural.—**Our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs.**

Mine, my; thine, thy. The original forms were **mine** and **thine** (O.E. *mîn*, *thîn*). The final **e** is no inflexion, and only marks the length of the preceding vowel.

The **-n** in *mine* and *thine* is an old genitive suffix.

My and **thy** are formed from **mine** and **thine** by the loss of *n*, as **no** from **none**, **a** from **an.**

Mine and **thine** are occasionally used before a noun beginning with a vowel, or **h**; but this usage is confined to poetry and the *solemn* style.

It is very common in the Bible, and in our old dramatists:—

"Give every man *thine* ear, but few *thy* voice."
Hamlet, I. 3.

"Conduct me to *mine* host."—*Macbeth*, I. 7.

Sometimes *mine* and *thine* are used when they follow the substantive, as,

"*Lordyng myne*."—*Gest. Rom.* p. 32.

"Master *mine*."
Merry Wives of Windsor, i. 1. 163.

Hi-s is a true genitive of the root **hi**.

He-r (O.E. **hi-re**), contains a genitive suffix fem. **-r**.

Its (O.E. *his*). This is quite a modern form, not much older than the end of the sixteenth century. It does not occur in the Bible; it was not used by Spenser, rarely by Shakspeare and Bacon, but is more frequently employed by Milton, and had quite established itself in Dryden's time as the regular form. The true genitive of *it* is *his*.

"Put up again thy sword into *his* place."—*Matt.* xxvi. 52.

"Learning has *his* infancy, when *it* is but beginning, and almost childish; then *his* youth, when *it* is luxuriant and juvenile; then *his* strength of years, when *it* is solid and reduced; and lastly, *his* old age, when it waxeth dry and exhaust."—BACON, *Essays*, 58.

In the fourteenth century we find **hit** = **its**. This form was kept up as late as the seventeenth century.

"Of *it* own accord."—*Levit.* xxv. 5.

"*It* knighthood shall do worse....it shall fright all *it* friends."
BEN JONSON, *The Silent Woman*, ii. 3.

The own = *its own*, occurs as early as the fourteenth century, and was in use in the sixteenth century.

"And albeit their trumpery be built up, and reared as high as the sky, yea even in a moment, and as it were of *the own* self, falleth it down again."—*Translation of Jewel*, ed. Jelf, p. 153.

Ou-r, you-r (O.E. *ur-e, eow-er.*)

These forms contain a suffix -r, which belongs also to the genitive plural of adjectives. See note on *Alderliefest*, § 111, p. 88.

Thei-r has this genitival suffix -r, which also appears in O.E. *hi-re, heo-re*; M.E. *he-r*. See table, p. 106.

IV. Independent or Absolute Possessives.

134. **Mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs,** are used without a following noun.

> "Be *thine* despair and sceptred care;
> To triumph and to die are *mine*."
>
> GRAY, *The Bard.*

Ours, yours, theirs are *double genitives*, containing a genitive plural suffix -r + a singular suffix -s. **Hers** is also a double genitive.

These genitives in -s are not found in the oldest English; they made their first appearance in the Northern dialects of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and are due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Swed. (old style) *mins, dins*, = mine, thine; *värs* = ours, *ers*, = yours.

The more ordinary forms in the Southern dialects were *hire, hir* (hers), *oure, our* (ours), &c. Sometimes we find *ouren* = ours, *heren* = theirs.

II.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

135. The Demonstratives are **the, that, this, such, so, same, yon, (yond, yonder).**

The (usually called the **Definite Article**), was formerly declined like an adjective for number, gender, and case; it is now indeclinable.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

	M.E.	E.A.	O.E.
Nom.	the	the	se
Gen.		the-s, tha-s	thæ-s
Dat.	the	tha-n, the-n	tha-m, thæ-m
Acc.	the	tha-n, tho-n	tha-ne
Inst.	the	the	thî, thê

Feminine.

Nom.	the	theo, the	seo
Gen.		the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Dat.	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Acc.	the	tha, theo, tho, th-	

Neuter.

Nom. Acc.	the, that	the-t, tha-t	thæ-t
Gen. Dat.	*like the masculine.*		

PLURAL.

Nom.	the, tho, tha, thai	tha, theo, the	thâ
Gen.	the	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-ra, thæ-ra
Dat.	the, (tha, tho, thai)	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-m, thæ-m
Acc.		tha, tho, the	thâ

In the second period the article is flexionless in Northern writers.

The old form *tho*, the plural of *the*, is used as late as Warner's time. *They* is occasionally found in Tudor English as the plural of *the*.

The, before comparatives, as, "*the* more *the* merrier," is a remnant of the old instrumental case *thî*. Cp. O.E. *thî mare* = Lat. *eo magis*. It must be parsed as an adverb when used in this way.

136. **That** was originally the neuter of **the.** In Northern dialects it replaced the demonstrative *thilk*, and was used before nouns of all genders. Its plurals were (1) **tho** (or *tha*) the pl. of the def. art.; (2) **thos** (or *thas*) the old plural of **this.**

The **t** in **that** is the old neuter suffix. Cp. **it, what.**

Those (O.E. *thâs*), was at first the plural of **this.** It had established itself, as early as the middle of the fourteenth century, as the plural of *that.*

137. **This** was originally neuter. As late as 1387 we find **thes** (masc.), **theos** (fem.), **this** (neuter), Lat. *hic, hæc, hoc.*

This is more emphatic than *the*, and was originally equivalent to *the-the.* Cp. Fr. *ce-ci, ce-la.*

These (O.E. *thæs, thâs*, E.E. *thas, theos, thos, thes, these*, M.E. *thes, thees, thise, these*).

The final **e** in *these*, marks the length of the preceding vowel; it is not an inflexion.

The form *these* in M.E. may have been a new plural formed from *this*, and therefore commonly spelt *thise.*

This and **that** sometimes replace the **former** and the **latter** (O.E. *se ærra* and *se æftera*) see § 116, p. 95.

This usually refers to the *latter* of two things mentioned, **that** to the *former.*

> "Two principles in human nature reign;
> Self-love to urge, and Reason to restrain;
> Nor *this* a good, nor *that* a bad we call."
>
> POPE, *Essay on Man*, ii. 2.

138. **Such** (O.E. *swilc*, E.E. *swilch*, M.E. *swilk*, *swich*, *swuch*, *sich*, *such*) is a compound of *so* (O.E. *swâ*), and *like* (O.E. *líc*). **Such like** is pleonastic.

We find compounds of *such* in *some such* and *none such*.

139. Thilk (O. E. *thylc*) = the like. Cp. Lat. *ta-lis*.

The like is used often as a substitute for the older *thilk*.

140. Ilk (O. E. *ylc*) = that like, same.

141. Otherlike and other the like are found in the seventeenth century.

"Chaffe, straw and *otherlike* mullocke."
HOLLAND, *Pliny*, 601.

142. **So** (O.E. *swâ*), is often used as a substitute, for *such*.

"I am wiser than *so*" *i.e.* a baby.—FORD.

143. **Same** (M.E. *same*, Gothic *sama*). In the oldest period *same* is a conjunction, as *swa same swa* = the same as; *sam—sam* = whether—or.

Same is joined to **the, this, that,** and **self** (*e.g.* **self-same.** See § 132, p. 112).

144. **Yon, yond, yonder** (O.E. *geon*, Goth. *jains*, Ger. *jener*) = that, *ille*.

"Near *yonder* copse."
GOLDSMITH, *Deserted Village*, l. 136.
"Beside *yon* straggling fence."—*Ib.* l. 193.

Yon is a derivative from the demonstrative root *ge* (or *ja*).

In O.E. geon = *ille*; geond = *illic* and *trans*.

Yonder (adv.) is in Gothic *jaindre*.

In M.E. we find *yon a* like *such a*, *each a*, &c., from which probably has arisen *yond-er*.

The Scotch still use *yon* substantively.

"*Yonder's* a bad man."
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 400.
"*Yon* er theves."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4890.
"*ȝonder* ar theves."—*Ib.* F.
"*ȝondir* be theves."—*Ib.* T.

" Bote take we him ute of *ȝon* den,
And selle we him to *ȝone* chapmen."
C. Mundi, G. ll. 4185–6.
" Take we him out of *ȝonder* den
And sel him forth to *ȝone* chapmen."—*Ib.* F.
" Take we him out of *that* den
And selle we him to *those* chapmen."—*Ib.* T.

III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

145. The **Interrogatives** are **who, which, what, whether,** with their indefinite compounds **whoever, whatever, whichever.**

146. **Who** (masc. and fem.) is only used of persons. Its neuter is **what.**

			O.E.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	who	what	hwâ	hwæt
Gen.	whose	whose	hwæs	hwæs
Dat.	whom	what	hwam, hwæm	hwæm
Acc.	whom	what	hwone, hwæne	hwæt
Inst.		[why]	hwî	hwî

	E.E.		M.E.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hwa, wha, wa	hwat, hwet, what, whæt	wha, hwo, wo, ho, quo	what, wat, huet
Gen.	hwas, whas, was	*as masc.*	whas, whos, wos, hos	*as masc.*
Dat.	hwam, whan,	*as masc.*	whom, wham, wom	*as masc.*
Acc.	hwan, wan, hwam, wham	hwat, whæt, what	whom, wan, won	what, wat, huet

Who-se was originally of all genders. It can be used absolutely, as, "*whose* is the crime?" The **s** in *whose* is a genitive suffix, as in *hi-s.*

Who-m is a dative like **hi-m.** It is now also accusative, the older acc. *hwone* having been replaced by it in the thirteenth century.

147. **Wha-t** was originally neuter (like *tha-t*), and never masc. or fem. It got its present usage as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century in the Northern dialects.

What for = *what sort of.*

"*What*'s he *for* a man."
PEELE, ed. Dyce, p. 383.

148. **Whe-ther** (O.E. *hwæther*, M.E. *whether*, *wher*), which of the two.

"God cupid, or the keeper, I know not *whether*,
Unto my cost and charges brought you thither."
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, i. 2.

"*Whether* of them twain did the will of his father."
Matt. xxi. 31.

For the suffix **-ther**, see *Three* § 118, p. 97.

We find in the seventeenth century *whether-so-ever*; in the fourteenth *whether-so, whether-ever.*

149. **Which** (O.E. *hwilc*; E.E. *whulc, whulch, wuch*; M.E. *wich, wuch, which, whilk*) contains the **wh** of *who, what*, and **-lc** = O.E. **līc** = like. Cp. *qua-lis.*

"Tele us *hwuch* is helle."—*O.E. Hom.* I. p. 249.
= Tell us *what* hell is *like.*
"Moyses seide, Lord *wuch* is þi face, let me hit iseo."—*Vernon MS.*

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. The **Relative** Pronouns are **who, which, what, that, as.**

In the oldest period, **who, which,** and **what,** were not relative, but interrogative pronouns; **whose,** and **whom,** were established as relatives as early as the thirteenth century; but **who** was much later in getting a relative force, and did not come into common use before the end of the sixteenth century.

151. **Who,** as a relative, is not recognized by Ben Jonson, who speaks of "one relative *which.*"

In 'Palladius on *Husbondrie,*' A.D. 1420, we find *who* used as a relative with a neuter antecedent.

Who (= he who, whoever) replaced the E.E. *the the,* or *the that* = he that.

"*Who* steals my purse steals trash."—*Othello,* iii. 3. 15.

In this sense who = *quisquis,* is an indefinite pronoun.

In M.E. the is sometimes joined to whose and whom.

Who (and its cases) are often followed in M.E. by that.

152. **Which** at present relates only to neuter antecedents, but this is comparatively a modern restriction.

"Our Father *which* art in heaven."

In M.E. which is frequently joined to the, that, as:—*the which, which that, which as,* &c.

153. **That,** originally the *neuter singular* relative, now agrees with singular and plural antecedents of all genders.

That, during the twelfth century, began to supply the place of the *indeclinable* relative **the,** and in the fourteenth century it was the ordinary, though not the

only relative. In the sixteenth century, **which** often supplied its place; and in the seventeenth century, **who** was frequently employed instead of it. At a later period (Addison's time), **that** had again come into fashion, and had almost driven **who** and **which** out of use.

That (O.E. *ðætte* = *ðæt þe*), is sometimes used in the sense of **that which**, or **what.**

"We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen." *St. John*, iii. 11.

154. **What** = *that which*, refers to singular and neuter antecedents. Its true genitive is **whose.**

"Nebuchadnezzar, the king, made an *image* of gold, *whose* height was threescore cubits." — *Dan.* iii. 1. See Milton's *Par. Lost.* Bk. i. l. 2.

What that, that what, what as, are archaic compounds.

155. **Who-so, what-so, who-so-ever, what-so-ever, which-so-ever,** are indefinite, like the Latin *quisquis, quicunque.*

O.E. swâ hwa swâ = E.E. *wha-swa, wha-se*, M.E. *who-so*, O.E. swâ hwylc swâ = which so, whichsoever.

In the sixteenth century we often find **what-som-ever** = M.E. *what-sum-ever; sum = as, so* is Danish.

"To *quat* contre *sum* that thou wend." *C. Mundi*, C. l. 1149.

"To *quat* contre *so* thu wend." *Ib.* G.

156. **Who-ever, what-ever, which-ever,** are relative and interrogative. They do not occur in the oldest English.

157. **As** (O.E. *eall-swa*; E.E. *alswa, alse*; M.E. *ase, as, als, also*), has a relative force after *such, same, that.*

Such — as = O.E. *swylc — swylc* = *such — such.* E.E. *swilc — als.*

V.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

158. The **Indefinite** Pronouns are **who, what, some, one, any, none, no, aught, naught, each, every, either, neither, other, else, enough, sundry, certain, several.**

159. **Who** = *anyone, some one,* has an indefinite sense in some old expressions:

"Not as *who* saith by authority,
But by the way of intreaty."
The 4 P.P. in *O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. 373.
"As *who* should say."—*Macbeth*, III. 6.

160. **What** is indefinite in

"I'll tell you *what* now of the devil."
MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, iii. 3.

What not, what else (M.E. *elles what*).

In O.E. *hwa, â-hwa* = anyone, *hwæt, â-hwæt* = *aught, anything.* In the thirteenth century we find what treated as a substantive in *an hwat* = *one thing*, which gave rise to E.E. *sum-what, other-what;* M.E. *much-what, little-what, many-what,* modern English somewhat.

There may have been some confusion between *aught, wight;* and *whit.* See § 164, p. 125.

"A strawnge *watt*" (= wight.)
Coventry Mysteries, p. 294
"I am a fulle gret *watt*."—*Townley Mysteries*, p. 8.
"Much *what*."—*Sir Gawayne*, ed. Morris, p. 41.
"A little *what*."—WICLIFFE, *John* vi. 7; and
SPENSER, *Shep. Cal.* (July).

161. **Some** (O.E. *sum;* M.E. *som, some,* aliquis, quelque), is both singular and plural, but is mostly used before plural nouns. It has the force of the indefinite *a, a certain, some one;* **some—some** = *one—another, some—others.*

Other-some = *some others*, is used by Shakespeare in the *Comedy of Errors*, iii. 2.

'Framing unto some unwholesome sores plaisters, and applying *other some* where no sore is."—HOOKER, v. 1. 1.

In O.E. and E.E. *sum* was declined like the strong declension of adjectives, see § 112, p. 89.

In M.E. we find pl. *sume, summe, some.*

As late as the fourteenth century we find *some* used in apposition with a pronoun or noun, as *sume we* = some of us.

For *some* = *an*, cp. the following versions of the same line:—

"Thar-bi groues *sum* apell tre."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 2877.

"Tharby grows *an* appel tre."—*Ib.* T.

Compounds of **some** are **somebody, something, someone, somewhat.**

Somebody seems to have got into the language through the use of **body** for **wight** (person).

"*A bodye* thynketh *himselfe* well emended in his substaunce and ryches, to whom hath happened some good goubbe of money."—ERASMUS, *Apophthegms*, englished by Udall, ed. 1542, p. 14*a*.

No body occurs in *Piers Plowman.*—B. xvi. 83, p. 292.

Something has in a great measure replaced *somewhat.* This usage is as early as the thirteenth century.

Some one arose in the early part of the fourteenth century, and replaced *sum man;* it is also used where in M.E. *oon, one* = *some one* was employed.

All and some (M.E. *al and sum*) = *all and one, all and singular*, is used by Dryden.

"— you must march both *all and some.*"—PEELE, *Edw. I.*

In the sixteenth century it often appears as *whole and some, all or some.*

Sometimes we meet with a redundancy of indefinites:—

"And the nature of all creatures is contained in *some certain one* place."—BECON, *Prayers*, p. 273.

"Thus saith Pope Alexander, Gregory, John Clement, or *some such other like.*"—PILKINGTON, p. 20.

162. **One** (O.E. *ân*, M.E. *on*, *oon*) is the numeral **one** with extended usage. It has a genitive **one's**, and a plural **ones.**

In the O.E. and M.E. *one* was declined according to the strong declension. See § 112, p. 89.

It has various usages :—

(1) In "*one* says" it replaces the O.E. *man*, M.E. *me* (Ger. *man*, Fr. *on*). This use is as early as the fifteenth century.

(2) It has an indefinite sense like the Latin *quidam*, Greek τις, especially before proper nouns, as, "*one* Simon a tanner" (*Acts* ix. 43). This use is found in E.E. See *St. Juliana*, p. 5.

"*One* in a certain place testifieth."—*Heb.* ii. 6.

"Also *oon* told hym that oon of his frendes hadde ispoke euel by hym."—*Trevisa*, iii. 317.

See *Piers Plowman*, B. xx. 157, 161, p. 374.

(3) It is equivalent to *some one*, see *King Lear*, i. 3.

(4) It is also used as a noun = *person*, *thing* (M.E. *wight*, *thing*). This usage is found in the fourteenth century.

(5) It is used instead of repeating the noun.

(6) **The one** = *the first.* See § 121, p. 99.

(7) **One** = *the same*, as, "it's all *one;*" "*one* and the same."

For **one** we sometimes use *a man*, *they*, *you*, *people.*

In M.E. **me** = *men*, is used for *one* (Fr. *on*); but with a *singular* verb.

"The vyne also *thai* sayen hath that nature,
That vynes yf *me* brenne, or white or blake,
And kest hem into wyne, *me* may be sure
The wyne coloure after the vynes take."

PALLADIUS, *Husbondrie*, p. 200.

The expression **as one that** = M.E. *as he that;* E.E *as the that; as a wiht that; as thing that.*—See *Juliana*, pp. 4, 5, 8, 20, 21.

163. **None, no** = O.E. *nân* = *ne ân* = *not one.* **No** is formed from **none** by the dropping off of **ne.** (Cp. **my** and **mine**). **None** is used absolutely, that is, without a following noun: "I have **none.**"

In **none other** (*Acts* iv. 12; *Deut.* v. 7), we have the M.E. use of *none* for *no* before a vowel.

Other-noon (Cp. *other some*) occurs in M.E.

No one = *not one*, is tautological, (being for *ne one one*) but it evidently replaces M.E. *no man, no wight.* Compounds of **no** are **nothing, nobody.** Ford has **nobody's else** for **nobody else's.**

164. **Aught** = **anything** (O.E. *âwiht, âwuht, auht, aht*). It contains the prefix *â* = ever, *aye;* and the root *ught* = *wight, whit* (O.E. *wiht, wuht, uht*), creature, thing, something.

Naught (O.E. *nâwiht, nawuht, nauht, naht, neaht, noht*), and **not** (M.E. *nat, not, noght*), are negative forms of **aught.**

Awhit is another form of *aught.* Cp. *anywhit, everywhit.* As *not* = nowhit = naught, *not a whit* is pleonastic.

That **nawight** = *noght* = *not* is seen from the following versions of the same line.

"Sco said, ne herd yee *na wight* hou."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4396.
"Scho said, ne herd ȝe *noght* how."—*Ib.* G.
"She seide, herde ȝe *not* how."—*Ib.* T.

In the following passages *nawight* is replaced by *nathing*, nothing.

"Ne sal thou *nawight* thar-wit win."—*Ib.* C. l. 919.
"Ne sal thou *naþinge* thar-with wyn."—*Ib.* F.

Whit = *aught*, in

"The devil have they *whit* else."
THERSITES, *O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 428.

65. **Any** (O.E. *ǽn-ig;* E.E. *æni, æi, ei;* M.E. *eny, ony, any* = ullus), has an adjective form like *dirt-y*, and the stem is *an* = *one*. The negative of **any** is **none**. In O.E. and E.E. we had a true negative, **nǽnig** = *nullus*.

In O.E. **any** was declined like *one*. A plural in **-e** was in use in the fourteenth century.

The genitive **anies** = *anyone's* occurs in Warner's *Albion's England*, p. 200.

Compounds of **any** are **anyone, anybody** (M.E. *any wight, any persone, any man*), **anything**.

166. **Each** = O.E. *æ-lc* = *â-ge-lic;* E.E. *elc, elch, euch;* M.E. *uch, ych, ech, ilk*.

Each is a compound of **â**, *ever*, and **lîc**, *like*. (Cp. *which, such*, &c.). In E.E. and M.E. **each** was followed by **an, a, on,** (= *one*). This use has survived in **each one**.

Each other besides being equivalent to *each the other*, see § 170, signifies *every second, each alternate*.

"Living and dying, *each other* day."
HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 2.

167. **Every** (E.E. *âver-ælc;* M.E. *ever-ich, ever-ilk*), is a compound of **ever** and **each**. It does not exist in the oldest period.

Every, as late as the seventeenth century, had a substantive use as in the older periods.

"*Every* of your wishes."—*Antony and Cleop.* ii. 2

"*Everich* of hem his lyf left for a wed."
LYDGATE, *The Storie of Thebes*, ii. l. 1186.

M.E. *evrichon, everilkan*, (cp. *each one*) survives in **everyone**.

Everybody and *everything* are recent formations.

Ever-any existed in the thirteenth century, and is used by Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p. 251), *evereither* is used by Pecock. (*Spec. Eng.* ed. Skeat, p. 55, l. 102.)

Ever-each is like *no one*, a pleonastic expression, which arose when the origin of *every* was forgotten.—(*See* Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 601).

168. **Either** (O.E. *æghwæther*, *ægther*, *â-hwæther*, *âwther*; E.E. *æither*, *aither*, *either*, *other*, *owther*; M.E. *either*, *ayther*, *other*, *outher*), is an old comparative form (see § 148) containing the prefix **â**, *ever*, and the suffix, **-ther**. It signifies "any one of two." Its negative is **neither**.

Either has a possessive form **either's**.

"Then *either's* love was *either's* life."
WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 57.
"*Eytheres* will."—*Piers Plowman*, B. xiii. 348, p. 228.

169. **Other** (O.E. *ô-ther* = one of two, second and other), contains the root **ô** = one, and the comparative suffix **-ther**. (*See* § 121, p. 99).

Other originally followed the strong declension of adjectives. Its plural was *othre*; when the final e became silent, a new plural *others* was formed.

Other for some time was used as a plural, both in M.E. and in the seventeenth century. Cp. *other some* = *some others*.

Another, any other, none other, some other, are forms that arose in the thirteenth century.

Other the like = M.E. otherlike, occurs in Hooker, v. 1. 3.

170. **One another, each other**, are sometimes called reciprocal pronouns, but they are not compounds. They love *one another*; they love *each other* = they love—*one* (loves) *another*; they love—*each* (loves) the *other*.

171. **Else** (O.E. *elles*), is the genitive case of an old pronominal root **el** = *other* (Cp. Lat. *alius*).

We find its pronominal character kept up in **what else**, O.E. *elles hwæt*. Warner (*Albion's England*, p. 178) has *elswhat*, cp. **aught else, nothing else.**

Becon constantly uses *what other thing* for *what else.* So in Hooker, v. xx. 6.

"For *what else* is the Law but the Gospel foreshewed?"

"*What other* the Gospel than the Law fulfilled?"

Other where = *elsewhere* in Hooker, v. xi. 12.

Else is used substantively in the sense of *something else* in the following passage.

"What's that she mumbles? The devil's paternoster? Would it were *else.*"—FORD, *Witch of Edmonton*, ii. 1.

172. Some demonstratives become indefinites. Cp. *this and that; such and such;* he knew not *which was which; ilk* and *ilk* in the Ayenbite, p. 54; *he* and *he* = one — another.—*Pier's Plowman*, B. p. 226; CHAUCER'S *Knight's Tale*, ll. 1756—1761.

"*This* would, I have, and *that*, and then I desire to be *such* and *such.*"—(Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 185.

"*One* takes upon him temperance, holiness, *another* austerity, a *third* an affected kind of simplicity, when, as indeed *he*, and *he*, and *he*, and the rest are 'hypocrites, ambidexters,' outsides, so many turning pictures, a lion on the one side, a lamb on the other."—*Ib.* p. 34.

"In with the polax preseth *he* and *he;*
By hynde the maste begynneth *he* to fle."
CHAUCER, ed. Morris, v. p. 296.

"Then was I dubde as true precise,
And faithful by and by;
And none was compted hoate enough
Save *he* and *he* and I.—DRANT'S *Horace.*

See Palladius, *Husbondrie*, p. 126, l. 610; Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 8.

173. Enough (O.E. *genōh*, E.E. *inoh*, *inoȝ*, M.E. *inough*, *ynough*, *anough*, *inow*, *enogh.*)

We sometimes meet with the plural, *enow*, *anow*, (M.E. *inowe*, *anowe*).

174. The words sundry, divers, certain, and several, have acquired more or less the force of indefinite pronouns.

"They had their *several* (= separate) partitions for heathen nations, their *several* for the people ..., their *several* for men, their *several* for women, their *several* for the priests, and for the high priest alone their *several.*"—HOOKER, v. xiv. 1.

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB.

175. Verbs may be classified, according to their meaning, as **Transitive** and **Intransitive.**

Transitive verbs express an action which does not terminate in the agent, but passes over to an object; as, "he *learns* his lesson." **Transitive** verbs are used **reflexively**; as, "*he killed himself;*" "*sit thee down,*" and **reciprocally**, as "*they helped one another.*"

Intransitive verbs express an action that is confined to the agent, as, "corn *grows.*" Some intransitive verbs, by the addition of a preposition, become transitive; as, "the man *laughs at* the boy;" "he *talks of* himself." Sometimes verbs compounded with prepositions become transitive; cp. *come* and *overcome*, *speak* and *bespeak*, *go* and *forgo*, &c.

176. Some intransitive verbs have a causative form which is always transitive, as,

Intrans.	Trans.
fall	fell
sit	set
rise	raise

As we are not now able to form new causative verbs, we are often obliged to give a *causative meaning* to an intransitive verb, and it then takes an object; as, "*he flies his kite*," "*he ran the knife into his leg.*" Intransitive verbs may take a noun of kindred meaning as object; as, "*he lived a good life*," "*he died a horrible death.*"

177. Verbs used with the third person only are called **Impersonal** verbs, as "*me thinks*," "*it rains*," &c. These verbs were much more numerous in the older stages of the language. (See Syntax of **Impersonal Verbs**).

178. The verb affirms action, or existence of a subject under certain conditions or relations, called **voice, mood, tense, number, person.** In some languages the verbal root undergoes a change of form to express these various relations.

Voice.

179. Transitive verbs have two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive.** When a verb is used in the **Active Voice,** the subject of the verb represents the actor, or agent; as, "*the lion killed the elephant.*" A verb is said to be in the **Passive Voice** where the subject denotes the object to which the action is directed; as, "*the elephant was killed by the lion.*"

In English we have no inflexions for the passive voice, as in Latin and Greek, but express the same notion by means of the passive participle and the verb *to be.* We have a very good substitute for the

passive form in the use of an indefinite pronoun for the subject of the verb; as, "*somebody killed the boy*" = the boy was killed; "*one knows not how it happened*," = it is not known how it happened; "*they say*," = it is said. We can also express the passive voice by means of the verb *be*, and a verbal noun; as, "*the book is printing*" (= "*the book is a printing*" = "*the book is in printing*") = "*the book is being printed.*"

The passive voice has grown out of reflexive verbs. The *r* in *amo*-r is supposed to be a corruption of the pronoun *se*. Cp. Fr. *s'appeler*, "to be called." Of the Teutonic languages only the Scandinavian dialects have formed a passive voice by means of the suffix *st* = *sk* = *sik* = *self*, Lat. *se;* we have instances of this in *busk*, "to prepare oneself," "to be ready," and *bask* from *bake.*

Mood.

180. **Mood** has reference to the manner or mode in which anything is predicated of the subject.

The **Indicative** mood makes a direct assertion, or asks some direct question about a fact; as, "*John has a book*," "*Has John a book?*"

The **Subjunctive** mood expresses some condition or supposition, as "I may go, if the day *be* fine;" "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty;" "*Had* I the book, I would give it to you;" "Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him."

As the **Subjunctive** mood depends upon the construction of sentences, its peculiarities belong to Syntax. *The Subjunctive is almost gone out of use;* its place is supplied by auxiliary words.

The **Imperative** mood expresses a command, entreaty, desire, request, &c., as, "*follow* me," "*grant* our request."

In this mood we employ the verbal root without any inflexion. It has only one person, the second (singular and plural). In the oldest southern English the plural took the termination -th.

Some languages inflect the imperative mood for all persons. We have a substitute for the first and third persons in the use of let; "let me call," "let him call." In old English *let* = cause. Formerly the Subjunctive had the sense of the Imperative, traces of which we have in such expressions as,

> "But *fall* I first
> Amongst my sorrows, ere my treacherous hand,
> Touch holy things."
> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Maid's Tragedy*, Act. iii. Sc. 1.
>
> "My soul turn from them, *turn we* to survey."
> GOLDSMITH, *Trav.* 165.
>
> "*Fall he* that must beneath his rival's arms."—POPE.

The **Infinitive** mood is an abstract noun, and has no inflexions for voice, mood, &c.; as, "*to see*," "*to know*." See p. 164 for a fuller treatment of the Infinitive Mood.

Participles are verbal adjectives, and always refer to some noun in the sentence. Many adjectives take a participial form in **-ing**, or **-ed**, or **-en**. See § 76, p. 59.

> "Thou to the *untamed* horse
> Didst use the *conquering* bit;
> And here the *well-shaped* oar,
> By *skilled* hands deftly *plied*,

Still leapeth through the sea,
Following in wondrous guise
The fair Nereids with their hundred feet."
PLUMPTRE'S *Œdipus at Colonus.*

A **Verbal Noun** in **-ing** (O.E. **-ung**), often corresponds to a Latin **gerund**, as "he thanked him for *saving* his life." Here *saving* is not a participle, because "*for saving*" represents an older, "*for the saving of.*"

"Thonkyng him *for the saving of* his life."
Gesta Rom. p. 7.

"*In knowing of* the tid of day."
CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p. 19.

"Concerning the means *of procuring* unity, men must beware that in *the procuring* or *muniting of* religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society."—BACON, *Essays*, 3.

Here *procuring* = *the procuring of.*

In such expressions as a "*walking stick*," "the *church-going* bell," the words *walking* and *going* are verbal nouns. In the earlier periods these nouns in *-ing* were preceded by various prepositions—**an, a, on, in, at, to.**

"He sent Ancus his sones *an hontynge.*"
Trevisa, iii. 87.

"We han a wyndowe *a wirchyng.*"
Piers Plowman, B. p. 34.

"He fel *on slepynge.*"
Generides, 201.

"While it was *in doynge.*"
Trevisa, iii. 97.

"While it was *in workyng.*"
HARDYNG.

"*At huntyng* he sleugh his father."
Ib.

"If she were going *to hanging*, no gallows should part us."
MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, II. 3.

"Hou hue Absolon *to hongynge* brouhte."
Piers Plowman, C. p. 64.

These verbal nouns may take an adjective or a demonstrative before them. They may also be used like an ordinary noun as the subject or object of a sentence.

Tense.

181. Verbs undergo a modification to indicate time. These forms are called **Tenses.** In the oldest period the verb was inflected for the present and perfect tenses only.

There was in O.E. no distinct form for the future, its place being supplied by the present. Cp. "he *goes* to town to-morrow." There were, however, traces of a past indefinite tense formed by the verb *was*, and the imperfect participle. The perfect and past tenses were expressed by one form.

In the thirteenth century we find the modern future expressed by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. In the fourteenth century we find (1) the present imperfect (continuous) formed by the verb *be*, and the present participle; (2) the perfect expressed by the auxiliary *have* and the passive participle; as well as the emphatic form of the present and past tenses, with the auxiliary *do*.

The growth of new forms render a fuller classification of the tenses necessary. The three simple tenses, **Present, Past,** and **Future,** have four varieties, (1) **indefinite,** (2) **imperfect,** (3) **perfect,** (4) **perfect continuous.**

The fourth variety belongs only to the *Active Voice*.

TABLE OF TENSES.

Tense.	Indefinite.	Imperfect and Continuous.	Perfect.	Perfect and Continuous.
Present	I praise	I am praising	I have praised	I have been praising
Past	I praised	I was praising	I had praised	I had been praising
Future	I shall praise	I shall be praising	I shall have praised	I shall have been praising

For **I praise** and **I praised** we sometimes use **I do praise, I did praise,** which are mostly emphatic. (See **Do** under the heading, **Auxiliary Verbs.**) In the modern stage of the language verbs undergo change of form only for the **present** and **past** tenses.

Number.

182. Verbs are modified to express the **number** and **person** of the subject. There are two **numbers, Singular** and **Plural**; and three **persons** in each number, **First, Second,** and **Third.** Inflexions for number have all disappeared, except in the verb *to be.* The person-endings are preserved only in the singular number of the present and past tenses of the Indicative mood.

For the origin of the inflexions that mark person, see **Verbal Inflexions,** § 200, p. 159.

Conjugation.

183. Verbs are classified, according to their mode of expressing the past tense, into **Strong** and **Weak Verbs.**

Strong Verbs form their past tense by change of the root vowel; nothing is added to the root, as, **fall, fell, fallen.** All passive participles of strong verbs once ended in **-en**; but this ending has been dropped in very many passive participles of this conjugation.

Weak Verbs form their past tense by adding to the root of the present the letter **-d,** or **-t.** The vowel

e sometimes serves to unite the suffix **-d** to the root. The passive participles of Weak Verbs end in **-d**, or **-t**.

Verbs that have vowel change in the past tense, as well as the suffix **-d**, are not strong verbs. The vowel change in **told, bought, taught**, has not the same origin as that in strong verbs.

The strong conjugation includes the oldest verbs in the language. Because this process of vowel change is no longer a regular one, we call these verbs *irregular*.

Very many strong verbs have disappeared from the language: many have gone over altogether to the weak conjugation; some have become weak in the past tense, others in the passive participle.

A few have lost their past tense and have taken the passive participle instead, as bit from bitten instead of boot (= he did bite), while others again have lost their old past participle, and have taken instead of it the past tense, as, stood for standen.

Strong Verbs.

Origin of Vowel Change in the Past Tense.

184. The oldest mode of forming the perfect tense in the Indo-European languages was by reduplication. as, *πέ-φευγα*, &c., Lat. *pe-pendi*, &c. We have only one verb of this class in modern English, the verb *did*. Cp. Lat. *dedi*.

In the oldest stages of the language, reduplicated forms were more numerous, as **hêht** (our *hight*), *called*, from **hatan**, *to call*. The Gothic *haihait*, shows the reduplication more plainly than the O.E. *hêht*. On comparing the Gothic verb *haihald* with the O.E. *heold*, and our *held*, we see that *vowel change* has

arisen out of an original reduplication; but we are not able to trace all the past tenses of strong verbs to an earlier reduplicated form. Those that can be so traced form a class by themselves, which we shall call the *First Division*, and the remainder, the *Second Division*.

First Division.

185. The first division consists of two classes of verbs, (1) those whose passive participles preserve the vowel of the present; (2) those whose passive participles have vowel change.

186. DIVISION I.—CLASS I.

			O.E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART
a, o, ea	e	a, o	ea, â, o	eo, e	ea, a
fall	fell	fallen	fealle	feoll	feallen
hang	hung	hung	hange	hêng	hangen
hold	held	held, holden	healde	heold	healden
blow	blew	blown	blâwe	bleow	blâwen
know	knew	known	cnâwe	cneow	cnâwen
grow	grew	grown	grôwe	greow	grôwen
throw	threw	thrown	thrâwe	threow	thrâwen
crow	crew [crowed[1]]	crown [crowed]	crâwe	creow	crâwen
beat	beat	beaten	beâte	beot	beâten
gang	[went]	gone	gange	geong	gangen
mow	[mowed]	[mowed] mown	mâwe	meow	mâwen
sow	[sowed]	sown	sâwe	seow	sâwen
hew	[hewed]	[hewed] hewn	heâwe	heow	heâwen

(1) The following verbs once belonged to this class: **flow, fold, low, leap, let, row, span, sleep, sweep, walk, well, weep.**

(2) As early as the fourteenth century we find weak past tenses of the verbs *know, blow, grow, leap, walk.*

(3) **Fold.** In the English Bible (*Nahum* x. 10) we find p. p. **folden.** Cotgrave has **unfolden.**

[1] The words in brackets are the ordinary forms now in use.

(4) **Held**, is an instance of a passive participle being replaced by a past tense. This arose through the dropping of *en* in **holden**, which left **hold** as the passive participle, in no wise differing in form from the present tense. Cp. *stood* for *stand* = *standen*.

(5) **Hew** retained its strong past tense as late as the sixteenth century.

"And (he) *hew* it al to smal peces."—*St. Juliana*, p. 85.

"And the yere folowynge Kyng Wyllyam *hewe* downe moche of the wood."—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 250.

Hewn and **mown** are mostly used as adjectives, as, "*hewn* stones," "*mown* grass."

(6) **Hang**. The old preterite was **heng** (See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 160). The past **hung** seems to have arisen from the M.E. form of the past participle **hongen** (pronounced like the *o* in *some*).

"Me þou3te I saw a wyn-tre
On þis tre, on vche a bow3e
Henge grapes þicke ynow3e:
Of þo grapes þat þere *hong*
In a coupe me þou3te I wrong."
Cursor Mundi, T. l. 4413.

Hardyng (*Chronicle*, p. 310) uses **hong** for **hung** (p. p.):—

"On Sainct Andrewes day thei wer drawe and **hong**."

"With ropes were thou bounde and on the gallowe *honge*."
FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

(7) **Sew** = *sewed*.

"An husband that *seu* god sed apon his land."—*Met. Hom.* p. 145.

(8) **Welk** = *walked*.

"A man *welk* thoru a wod his wai"—*Cursor Mundi, Edinburgh MS.*

"And than we *welk* forth."—*Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner, vol. i. p. 111.

(9) **Leep** (lep) = *leaped*.

'For which his hors for feere gan to turne,
And *leep* asyde, and foundred as he *leep*."
CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 1828.

(10) **Flowed.** The O.E. *fleow* became in E.E. *fleaw, fleau;* in M.E. *flew* is used as the past of *fly* or *flee.*

"The flood that *ovyrflew* al the world."—CAPGRAVE, p. 17.

(11) **Slep** = *sleeped.*

"Thre daies *slep* he al on-on."—*O.E. Misc.* p. 24.

(12) **Wep** = *weeped.*

"Swiche teares *wep* ure drihten."—*O.E. Hom. II.* p. 145.

187. DIVISION I.—CLASS II.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	O.E. PRES.	O.E. PAST	O.E. PASS. PART.
i	a, u, ou	u, ou	i	a	u
begin	began	begun	on-ginne[1]	on-gann	on-gunnen
cling	clang [clung]	clung	clinge	clang	clungen
climb	clomb [climbed]	[climbed]	climbe	clamb	clumben
drink	drank	drunk	drince	dranc	druncen
run	ran	run	rinne, yrne	ran, arn	runnen
swim	swam	swum	swimme	swamm	swummen
spin	span [spun]	spun	spinne	spann	spunnen
sing	sang	sung	singe	sang	sungen
shrink	shrank	shrunk	since	sanc	suncen
sink	sank	sunk	scrince	scranc	scruncen
fling	flang [flung]	flung	—	—	—
sling	slang [slung]	slung	—	—	—
ring	rang	rung	hringe	hrang	hrungen
slink	slunk	slung	—	—	—
spring	sprang	sprung	springe	sprang	sprungen
sting	stang [stung]	stung	stinge	stang	stungen
swing	swang [swung]	swung	swinge	swang	swungen
wring	wrang [wrung]	wrung	wringe	wrang	wrungen
win	wan [won]	won	—	—	—
bind	bound	bounden [bound]	binde	band	bunden
find	found	found	finde	fand	funden
fight	fought	fought	—	—	—
grind	ground	ground	grinde	grand	grunden
wind	wound	wound	—	—	—
e	o	o	e	ea	o
help	holp [helped]	holpen [helped]	helpe	healp	holpen
melt	molt [melted]	molten [melted]	melte	mealt	molten
swell	[swelled]	swollen [swelled]	swelle	sweal	swollen
burst	burst	burst	berste	bearst	borsten

[1] All these verbs had a plural form in u;—*we clungon*, &c. = we clung.

(1) To this class once belonged **bellow, burn, ding, delve, carve, milk, mourn, starve, swallow, stint, spurn, thrash, wink, yield.**

(2) **Bounden, drunken, molten, shrunken, sunken,** are still occasionally used as *adjectives.*

(3) The forms in **u** (*spun, clung*) have arisen from the passive participle.

(4) The **ou** in *bound,* &c. stands for an older **o** or **a.** This **ou** is probably due to the **u** in the past participle which in M.E. became **ou**; thus the O.E. *funden* = M.E. *founden.* Cp. O.E. *cu, hu* = M.E. *cou, hou* = Eng. *cow, how.*

(5) **Clomb** = *climbed.*

"So *clomb* this first grand thief into God's fold."
MILTON, *Paradise Lost,* iv. 192.

"We forded the river, and *clomb* the high hill."
BYRON, *Siege of Corinth,* l. 6.

(6) **Swal** = *swelled.*

"And [he] *swalle* and become grete."
LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 37.

"Hir thought it *swal* so sore about hir hert."
CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 6549.

(7) **Dalf** = *delved.*

"When Adam *dalve* and Eve span,
Who was then the gentleman?"
PILKINGTON, p. 125; see *Piers Plowman,* B. vi. 193.

"Whenne thei be *dolven* in her den."
Babees Book, p. 52.

(8) **Halp** = *helped.*

"This good lady she *halpe.*"
LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 136.

"Those that be in hell cannot be *holpen* by it [prayer]."—GRINDAL, *Rem.* p. 34.

(9) **Yald** = *yielded.*

"He *yalde* ayen the sight unto this good man."—LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 102.

"He *yald* hym creaunt to Crist."

Piers Plowman, ed. Wright, l. 7810, B. xii. 193.

Surrey has the old past participle *yolden;* Fabyan has *yolded.*

(10) **Foughten** = *fought* (p.p.).

"This yere was the felde of Dykysmew *foughten.*"—FABYAN, p. 683.

"On the *foughten* field."

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, vi. 410.

(11) **Malt** = *melted.*

"And the metalle be the hete of the fire *malt.*"

CAPGRAVE, p. 9.

(12) **Dang** = *dinged.*

"That thai suld tak kobille stanes,
And *ding* his teth out all at anes;
And when thai with the stanes him *dang*,
He stode ay laghand tham omang."

MS. Harl. 4196, fol. 170.

(13) **Carf** = *carved.*

"And *carf* byforn his fader at the table."

CHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 100.

"Tho was he *corven* out of his harneys."

The Knightes Tale, l. 1838.

(14) **Starf** = *starved, died.*

"— Kyng Capaneus
That *starf* at Thebes."

Ib. l. 935.

(15) **Wonk** = *wunked.*

"He *wonk*, and gan about hyme to behold."

Lancel. of the Laik, l. 1058.

(16) **Burst** (past) has come in through the old p. p. *borsten* or *bursten*. The true past is **brast** or **barst.**

"And ute as a brok it *brast* þe strand."

Cursor Mundi, l. 6392.

188. *Second Division.*

Division II.—Class I.

				O.E.	
Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.	Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
ea	o (a)	o	e	æ	o
(1) bear	bore, bare*	born	bere	bær	boren
break	broke, brake*	broken			
shear	[sheared]	shorn [sheared]	scere	scær	scoren
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken	sprece	spræc	sprecen
steal	stole	stolen	stele	stæl	stolen
tear	tore, tare*	torn	tere	tær	toren
(2) come	came	come	cume	com	cumen

(1) The old verbs nim (take), quell once belonged to this class.

(2) The O.E. æ became in M.E. a (cp. the archaic forms bare, spake, brake), and o.

(3) The n of the p.p. in M.E. was often dropped in all dialects except the Northern. We find in Shakespeare many instances of these curtailed forms, as, broke, spoke, stole, for *broken, spoken, stolen.*

(4) Shear. The old past tense was share or shore.

"First he *shar* a-two here throtes."—Havelok, l. 1413.

189. Division II.—Class II.

				O.E.	
Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.	Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
i	a	i	i, e	æ, (ea)	e
(1) bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid	bidde	bæd	beden
give	gave	given	gife	geaf	gifen
lie	lay	lien,* lain	licge	læg	legen
sit	sat	sat	sitte	sæt	seten
ea, (ee), e	a, (o)	ea, (ee,) o			
(2) eat	ate	eaten	ete	æt	eten
get	gat, got	gotten,* got	-gite	-geat	-geten
tread	trod	trodden, trod	trede	træd	treden
see	saw	seen	seo, seohe	seah	ge-sên
weave	wove	woven	wefe	wæf	wefen
—	quoth	—	cwethe	cwæth	cweden
—	was	—	[wese]	wæs	wesen

Words marked thus * are archaic.

(1) **Quoth** is now used as a present tense. The root of the present is seen in *bequeathe*, the old preterite of which was *biquath*:—

"[He] *biquath* his serke to his love."

Gest. Rom. 23.

(2) **Fret, knead, wreak,** and **mete** (measure), once belonged to this conjugation.

(3) The old form **lien** occurs in *Gen.* xxvi. 10, *Ps.* lxviii. In Tyndall it is spelt **lyne, lyen.**

(4) The past tenses of **wreak** in M.E. were *wrek* and *wrak*; p.p. *ywroken.* Spenser uses the p.p. *wroken.* Surrey has *unwroken* = *unrevenged.*

(5) The **o** in **trod, got, quoth,** arises out of M.E. **a** = O.E. = æ.

(6) Scott (*Waverley*, xi.) has **eat** = *ate.* Shakespeare (*King John* I. 1.), has **eat** = *eaten*; O.E. æ becomes M.E. e(ee), as well as a; hence M.E. eet = eat = ate.

"Butter and bred thai *ete* al-sua."

C. Mundi, G., l. 2715.

"Butter and breed thei *eet* also."—*Ib.* T.

190. Division II.—Class III.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.	Pres.	Past	Pass. Part
a	o, oo, e	a (o)	a	o	a
awake	awoke	awoke	wace	wôc	wacen
forsake	forsook	forsaken			
lade	[laded]	laden[laded]	hlade	hlôd	hladen
grave, engrave	[graved]	[graved] graven	grafe	grôf	grafen
stand	stood	stood	stande	stôd	standen
shave	[shaved]	shaven [shaved]	scaf	scôf	scafen
shake	shook	shaken	scace	scôc	scacen
swear	swore	sworn	swerige	swôr	sworen
take	took	taken	tace	tôc	tacen
draw	drew	drawn	drage	drôh	dragen
slay	slew	slain	sleahhe	slôh	sleahhen

(1) To this class of verbs once belonged **ache, bake, fare, gnaw, heave, laugh, shape, step, wade, wash, wax, yell.**

(2) The past tense is often used for the past participle, as **mistook** = *mistaken* (*Jul. Cæsar*, I. 2; Milton's *Arcades*),

shook = shaken (*Paradise Lost*, VI., 219); **stood** has taken the place of the p.p. **standen**, or **stonden**.

(3) **Sware** for **swore** occurs in *Mark*, VI., 23. The **a** is not original, but probably arose through the M.E. *swar=swer*, which caused it to be classed with *spake*, *bare*, &c. Cp. l. 1618 in *Cursor Mundi*, where "he *suar* his ath" in Cotton MS. (Northern dialect) = "he *swor* an ooth" in Trin. MS. (Midland dialect).

(4) **Bake.** The old p.p. **baken** occurs in *Levit.* ii. 4.

" myn hungir *book* thi blisful breed."
POL. *Rel. Love Poems*, p. 191.

" —benes and bren *ybaken* togideres."
Piers Plowman, vi. B. 184, p. 102.

(5) **Gnaw** was once conjugated like **draw, slay.** In M.E. we find *gnow* and *gnew; gnew* was used late in the sixteenth century. The p.p. *be-gnawn* occurs in the *Taming of the Shrew*, iii. 2.

" þat best *gnow* up al bidene."—*Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 6043.

" So depe hi [rasours] *wode* and *gnowe*."—*St. Juliana*, *p.* 85.

(6) **Heave.** For **heaved** we sometimes find **hove** and **heft.**

The O.E. pret. was *hôf*. E.E. *hæf, heof, hef*, M.E. *hef, hove.*

" She *hef* hir heued heyer."—CHAUCER, *Boethius*, l. 5141.

" Ure lafdi.....this dai was *hoven* into heuene."—*O.E. Hom.* II. p. 167.

(7) **Shape.** The old past tense **shope**, was in use in the sixteenth century.

" I *shoop* me into shroudes."
Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 2.

" But at the last god *shope* a remedy."
HICKSCORNER, p. 163, ed. 1874.

The p.p. occurs in mis-*shapen, ill-shapen.* See *Ps.* li. 5.

(8) **Grave.** We have the old p p. as an adjective in "a *graven* image."

The verb *to grave* once signified *to bury*.

" In Ebron hir *grof* Abraham,
Thar first was *graven* hali Adam."
C. Mundi, G. l. 3213.

(9) **Lade.** We find as passive participle **loden, loaden,** as well as **laden.**

(10) **Wash.** The old p.p. was retained very late in **unwashen.**

" Hir body *wessch* with water."
CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 1425.

(11) **Wax** to grow. Spenser has *wox* past, and *woxen* p.p., *waxen* = *grown*, occurs in *Gen.* xix. 13, *Lev.* xxv. 39.

" þai stod þan still and *wex* no more."
Cursor Mundi, l. 1420.

191. DIVISION II.—CLASS IV.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
i (long)	o	i (short)	î	â	i
a-bide	abode	abode, abiden*	bîde	bâd	biden
bite	bit	bitten	bîte	bât	biten
drive	drove	driven	drîfe	drâf	drifen
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid	cîde	câd	ciden
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid	rîde	râd	riden
rise	rose	risen	rîse	râs	risen
rive	rove [rived]	riven [rived]			
shine	shone	shone	scîne	scân	scinen
shrive	shrove	shriven	scrîfe	scrâf	gescrifen
slide	slid	slidden, slid	slîde	slâd	sliden
smite	smote, smit*	smitten	smîte	smât	smiten
stride	strode	stridden	strîthe	strâth	strithen
thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, throve*	—	—	—
write	wrote, writ*	written, writ*	wrîte	wrât	writen
strike	struck	struck, stricken	strîce	strâc	stricen
strive	strove	striven	—	—	—

* Obsolete.

(1) To this class once belonged **gripe, flite** (strive), **glide, reap, slit, spew, sigh, wreathe.**

(2) The **o** in this class of verbs stands for an older **a**, which occurs in the archaic forms **drave** (*Josh.* xvi. 10, Spenser, *F. Q.* VI. vii. 12); **strake** (*Acts*, xxvii. 17); **strave** (Surrey).

(3) **Bit** (cp. the old past tenses **rid, slid, writ, smit**), is borrowed from the pass. participle. The true form is **bot**, or **boot.**

"The serpent *boot* the grehounde grevously."
Gest. Rom. 87.

(4) **Shone, abode, struck** (p.p.) show how the past tense has replaced the older passive participle.

"Till the sunne haveth *sinen*."
= Till the sun hath shone.
O.E. Miscell. p. 1.

"Yf he had *abyden* at home."
LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 170.

"Well *stricken* in years."
Luke i. 7; *see Ps.* liii. 4.

Shakespeare has,

"*Struck* in years."—*Rich. III.* i. 1.

(5) **Wreathen** sometimes occurs as the p.p. of **wreathe**, or **writhe.**

"*Wreathen* hair."
LATIMER; see *Exodus*, xxviii. 14, 22, 24, 25.

The M.E. past of *wrethe* was *wrooth* or *wroth*. In the sixteenth century we find *writhe* used as a past tense.

"He *writhe* her necke in sonder."
STUBS, *The Anatomie of Abuses*, p. 67, ed. 1585.

(6) "He *grop* [griped] an axe, that was ful god."
HAVELOK, l. 1776.

(7) "I thair chaulis *raf* [rived] in tua."
Cursor Mundi, G. p. 433.

(8) "He *slod* [slid] sliȝle a-down."
Will. of Palerne, l. 792.

(9) "The vapour, which that of the erthe *glod* [glided]."
CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 10707.

(10) "And Jacob *chode* with Laban."
Gen. xxxi. 36.

DIVISION II.—CLASS V.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ee, oo	o	o	eo	ea	o
freeze	froze	frozen	freose	freâs	froren
seethe	sod* [seethed]	sodden, sod* [seethed]	seothe	seâth	soden
cleave	clove [cleft]	cloven [cleft]	cleofe	cleâf	clofen
choose	chose	chosen	ceose	ceâs	coren
lose	[lost]	[lost] lorn,* forlorn	leose	leâs	loren
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*	sceote	sceât	scoten
fly	flew	flown	fleoge, fleohe	fleâh	flogen

(1) Many weak verbs once belonged to this class, as, **brook, bow, brew, chew, creep, crowd, dive, flee, fleet** (float), **lie lose, lock, greet, knot, reek, rue, shove, smoke, snow, suck, slip, tug.**

(2) **Clave** occurs in the Bible for **clove** (*Gen.* xx. 3).

Cloven has now only an adjectival force, as in "*cloven* foot."

"It [sea] *clef* [*claue* C.] and gaf him redi gate."
Cursor Mundi, G. l. 6262.

Cleave, "to cling to," is a weak verb, yet **clave** is found in *Ruth*, i. 14, as its past tense.

(3) **Lorn** = *losen*, and **forlorn** = *forlosen*, are archaic forms. In the O.E. p.p. the s has passed into an r (cp. *was* and *were*, &c).

"——After he had fair Una *lorn*."
SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 42.

"Thritti yeir es siþen gan
þat i mi sun had *losen* dere."—*Cursor Mundi*, C. l. 5363.

(4) **Froren** = *frozen*.

"My heart blood is well nigh *froren* (frozen) I feel."
Ib. Shep. Cal, Feb.

"——The parching air
Burns *frore* (= frozen) and cold performs th' effect of fire."
MILTON, *Par. Lost.*

"A *froren* mur [wall]."—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 151.

(5) **Chosen** has replaced the old p.p. **coren**.

"For hir childe theune sho him *chees*."
Cursor Mundi, T. l. 5643.

" He is to-fore alle othre *i-coren*."
O.E. Misc. p. 98.

(6) Seethe. In the Bible (*Gen.* xxv. 29), sod = *boiled* occurs as the past tense.

" Wortes or other herbes . . . .
The whiche sche schredde and *seeth* for hir lyvinge."
CHAUCER, *The Clerkes Tale*, l. 227.

" Some (fisch) thei solde and some thei *sothe*."
Piers Plowman, B. xv. 288.

" *Ysothe* or ybake."—*Ib.* p. 278.

" I force not whether it be *sodden* or roast."
The Four Elements, p. 35, ed. 1874.

" Of all manner of dishes both *sod* and roast."—*Ib.* p. 25.

(7) " Hit *snew* [snowed] to hem as hit were floure."
Cursor Mundi, T. l. 6381.

192. Some verbs that have now strong past tense or passive participle, were once weak.[1]

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
betide	betid*	[betid]
dig	dug	dug
	digged*	digged*
hide	hid	hidden, [hid]
rot	[rotted]	rotten
show	[showed]	shown
	[shewed]	[shewed, showed]
stick	stuck	stuck
	stack*	—
strew	[strewed]	strown
spit	spit,* spat	spat, spitten*
saw	[sawed]	sawn
wear	wore	worn
	ware*	

The past tenses *betid*, *hid*, *spit*, *spat*, are only apparently *strong*. The M.E. forms *betid-de*, *hid-de*, *spit-te*, *spat-te*, (cp. *swat-te*, sweated) were *weak*.

[1] Forms marked thus * are *archaic*. Forms in brackets are *weak*.

193. Alphabetical List of Strong Verbs.[1]

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
	*awaked**	*awaked*
bake	—	baken
	baked	*baked*
bear (bring forth)	bore, bare*	born
bear (carry)	bore, bare*	borne
beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beholden, beheld
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bounden,* bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, brake*	broken
burst	burst	burst, bursten*
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose, chase*	chosen
cleave (split)	clove	cloven
	clave*	—
	cleft	*cleft*
cling	clung	clung
climb	clomb	—
	climbed	*climbed*
cling	clang	clung
come	came	come
crow	crew	crown
	crowed	*crowed*
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk, drunken
drive	drove, drave*	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

[1] The forms in italics are *weak*. Those marked * thus are *archaic*.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
fight	fought	foughten*, fought
find	found	found
fling	flung, flang*	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
	forgat*	forgot*
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
		frorn, frore*
get	got, gat*	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	*went*	gone
grave	*graved*	graven
en-grave		en-graven*
	engraved	*engraved*
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
	hanged	*hanged*
heave	hove	—
	heaved	*heaved*
help	—	holpen
	helped	*helped*
hew	—	hewn
	hewed	*hewed*
hold	held	held, holden
know	knew	known
lade	—	laden, loaden
	laded	*laded*
lie	lay	lain, lien*
lose	—	lorn, forlorn
	lost	*lost*
melt	—	molten
	melted	*melted*
mow	—	mown
	mowed	*mowed*
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid*
ring	rang, rung*	rung

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
rise	rose	risen
rive	—	riven
	rived	*rived*
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
seethe	sod	sodden, sod*
	seethed	*seethed*
shake	shook	shaken
shave	*shaved*	shaven, *shaved*
shear	*sheared*, shore*	shorn, *sheared*
shine	shone	shone
	shined	shined*
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*
shrink	shrank	shrunk
	shrunk*	shrunken
sing	sang, sung*	sung
sink	sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat	sat, sitten*
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid, slidden
sling	slung, slang*	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smite	smote, smit*	smitten, smit*
sow	—	sown
	sowed	*sowed*
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken
spin	spun, span*	spun
spring	sprung, sprang*	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole, stale*	stolen
sting	stung, stang*	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode, strid*	stridden
strike	struck	struck
		stricken
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
	sware*	
swell	*swelled*	swollen, *swelled*

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
swim	swam, swum*	swam
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore, tare*	torn
thrive	throve	thriven
	thrived	*thrived*
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden, trod
wake	woke	—
	waked	*waked*
weave	wove	woven
win	won, wan*	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung, wrang*	wrung
write	wrote, writ*	written

Weak Verbs.

194. The **strong** conjugation comprehends all primitive verbs; to the weak belong all derivative and borrowed verbs.

The **weak** conjugation is sometimes called the **regular** conjugation, because the formation of the past tense of weak verbs by means of the suffix **d**, is the ordinary method now in use. The method of forming the past tense by reduplication and by vowel change, is quite obsolete. Children and uneducated persons often make the strong verbs conform to the weak conjugation, and say *seed* for *saw*, &c. We have done exactly the same with regard to many old verbs, as, *shoved* for *shof*, *brewed* for *brew*, &c.

195. Weak Verbs form their past tense by means of the suffix **-d** or **-t**.

In old English we find that this ending had a longer form **-de**, as, Ic ner-e-de *I saved*. This **-de** represents a more primitive **dede** = **did**, which is the past tense, (formed by reduplication) of the verb **do**.

I **loved** = I **love-did**; thou **lovedest** = thou **love-didst**, &c.

196. The suffix **-d** is united to the root by the connecting vowel **-e**, as, **lov-e-d, command-e-d.**

(1) The connecting vowel, though preserved in writing, is dropped in pronunciation, except when the verbal root ends in a dental. Thus we **loved, praised, thanked,** are pronounced **lovd, praizd, thankt**; but in **commanded,** and **lifted,** the **-ed** has, necessarily, its full pronunciation.

The verbs of this class in O.E. had the radical vowel *short.*

For the reason of the change of **d** to **t**, see § p. 63, 45.

197. The passive participles also end in **d** or **t.** This suffix has not the same origin as the **d** of the past tense.

198. The following verbs have no connecting vowel, and are sometimes called *contracted* verbs :—

(2) *a.* Before the addition of the suffix **-d**, the radical vowel is shortened.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
hear	heard	heard
shoe	shod	shod
flee	fled	fled

b. If the root ends in **d**, the suffix **-d** is dropped, and the radical vowel is shortened.

feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
read	red	red

In the O.E. the past tenses of *a* and *b* were the same : cp. O.E.

	Inf.	Past	Pass Part.
a.	hŷr-an (hear)	hyr-de	hŷr-ed
	fêd -an (feed)	fêd-de	fêd-ed
b.	lǽd-an (lead)	lǽd-de	lêd-ed

Flee was originally strong, see p. 140 ; *meet, met, met* has conformed to *lead*, &c. Cp. O.E. *mêtan, mêt-te, mêt-ed.*

In E.E. we find the shortened p.p. **fed, led,** &c. The loss of the final **e** of the past tense, in the fifteenth century, reduced the past tense and the p.p. to the same form: thus, *ledde* became *ledd*, or *led*.

In some few verbs ending in **a** liquid, or combination **of** liquids, **t** has replaced the older **d**.

	Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
	feel	felt	felt
	deal	dealt	dealt
	smell	smelt	smelt
	mean	meant	meant
	dream	dreamt	dreamt
	burn	burnt	burnt
Cp. O.E.	dæl-an	dæl-de	gedæl-ed
	bærn-an	bærn-de	bærn-ed

(3) The suffix **-d (-t)** is often dropped after **d, t, st, rt, ft,** and the present, past, and passive participle, are identical in form.

rid	rid	rid
shred	shred	shred
set	set	set
shut	shut	shut
cut	cut	cut
put	put	put
hurt	hurt	hurt
lift	lift[1]	lift
thrust	thrust	thrust
cast	cast	cast

In O.E. *rid* and *set* were

Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
â-hreddan	âhred-de	â-hredd-ed
sett-an	set-te	sett-ed, set

Shut, put, shred, spread, were perhaps similarly conjugated. *Cut, put, hurt, lift,* &c. are not found in O.E.

In Middle English the past tense had a form distinct from

[1] In the English Bible.

the pass. participle, as, *ridde, shredde, sette, cutte,* &c. We have now longer forms for some of the M.E. shorter ones; cp. *reste* = *rested; wette* = *wetted,* &c. O.E. *scyl-de* = *shielded; stylte* = *stilted.*

(4) The suffix **-t** replaces **d** after **p, f, s, ch, v.** The radical vowel, if long, is shortened.

Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
kiss	kist	kist
lose	lost	lost
pitch	pight	pight*
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft

The **v** in *leave, cleave, bereave,* was originally **f.** In M.E. *crept, wept* in the past tense were *crepte, wepte:* and also *crep, wep,* (strong forms).

(5) Verbs ending in **ld, nd, rd,** changed the **d** of the root into **t,** and the tense suffix is dropped.

build	built	built
gild	guilded, gilt	gilt
bend	bent	bent
send	sent	sent
gird	girt	girt

The **t** in the past tense of *built,* &c., stands for an original **d + de,** which became **de,** then **te,** and, lastly, **t.** This last change took place during the fourteenth century.

In Elizabethan writers we meet with the longer forms, *builded,* &c., and we have also two participial forms, the contracted, and the uncontracted, with slightly different meanings, as, **gilt** and **gilded, bent** and **bended, blent** and **blended.**

In O.E. we find only the long forms of the p.p., as, *gyrd-ed, send-ed,* &c.

(6) Some few verbs have vowel-change with the addition of **d** or **t** in the past tense.

* Archaic.

(*a*)	tell	told	told
	sell	sold	sold
(*b*)	seek	sought	sought
	teach	taught	taught

The change of vowel in these verbs is not the same as that in the strong verbs. It is the present that has changed. The root of **tell** is **tal**, which we preserve in **tale**, and **tal-k**. Cp. **sell** and **sale**. Between the root and the infinitive suffix there was once an **i**, which turned the **a** to **e**; thus, root *tal*, whence *tali-en*, modified to *teli-en* or *tell-en*. Cp. *man*, *men*. The **o** in **told**, **sold**, represents the older **a** of *tale*, *talk*, which was never modified by the lost suffix **-i**.

The **t** in **sought**, &c., is due to the *sharp k* or *c* in **seek**. Under the influence of **t**, the guttural has become *h*, or *gh*.

In the seventeenth century we find **rought**, **raught**, **straught**, the past tenses of *reck*, *reach*, *stretch*.

In M.E. we had *roughte* = *recked*; *raughte* = *reached*; *straughte* = *stretched*; *laughte* = *latched*, *seized*.

The verbs of this class were in O.E. contracted in past tense and pass. part.

199. The following weak verbs have some peculiarities that need explanation.

Catch, caught, caught. This verb of Norman-French origin has followed the past tense &c. of E.E. *lacchen*, to catch, take; *lahte* (past).

Analagous to *caught* we find **fraught**, as well as **freighted**; and **distraught** for distracted; also *raught* = *reached* in Shakespeare, *Love's Labour Lost*, IV. 2, 41; *raught* also = *reft*. Cp. 2 *Hen. VI.* II. 3, 43.

> "I *raught* his head from his body."
>
> *Pierce Penilesse*, p. 82.

Clothe, clad, clad. In O.E. we find *clâthian*, (inf.) *clâthode* (past), *clâthod* (p.p.), = M.E. *clothe* (*clethe*), *clothede* (*clethede*, *cledde*), *cled*, *clad*.

In M.E. we find *ledde*, *ladde*, = *led*, which has probably led to *clad* through *cled* = *cledde* = *clethde*.

Make, made, made. **Made** lost its radical *k* as early as the thirteenth century. In the fourteenth we find in the Northern dialects *ma* (inf) and *mas* = *makes*. Cp. M.E. *ta* = *to take*, *tas* = *takes*, *tan* = *taken*.

Have, had, had; O.E. *habban*, *hæfde*, *hæfed*; E.E. *have*, *hefde* (*hedde*, *hadde*), *ihafd* (*ihad*).

There was also a short form *ha*, *to have*, from which comes **has** = *haves*. In the M.E. Northern dialect we find *has*. See Bruce, xiii. 642, (ed. Skeat).

Say, said, said; O.E. *secgan*, *sægde*, *sægd*.

Lay, laid, laid; O.E. *lecgan*, *lecgde*, *lecgd*.

In **say, lay** (M.E. *seye*,, *leye*), the **y** represents the older **cg** (g).

Buy, bought, bought; O.E. *bycgan*, *bohte*, *boht*. In M.E. *buggen*, *bugge* = *to buy*: and here the **y** represents an older *g* which makes its appearance in the past tense. Cp. *slay* and *slaughter*.

Think, thought, thought; O.E. *thencan*, *thôhte*, *thôht*.

The **n** is not radical; cp. *gange* and *go*; *stand* and *stood*.

(Me)thinks, (me)thought, (me)thought; O.E. *thyncth*, *thuhte*, *thûht*.

Work, wrought, wrought; O.E. *wyrcan*, *worhte*, *worht*.

Wrought, as a past tense, is almost superseded by the more modern form, **worked**.

Went was originally the past tense of **wend**. O.E. *wendan*, *to turn*, *go*. It replaced the O.E. *eo-de*, M.E. *ede*, *ode*, *yode* (past tense of the root **i** *to go*).

Go (old form **gang**) was originally a strong verb, as is seen by its p.p. **gone**.

Ago = **agone** is the p.p. of the O.E. verb *agan*,

to go by, elapse. It is now used adverbially, as "a long time *ago*."

"By Saint Mary, and I wist that, I would be *ago*."
HICKSCORNER, p. 167, ed. 1874.

. . . . . .

"Who, think you, brought here this figure?
Certes, Lord Nature,
Himself not long *agone*."
The Four Elements, p. 28, ed. 1874.

Do, did, done, is a reduplicated verb, and of course belongs to the strong conjugation of verbs.

The Sanskrit *dhâ* to place is cognate with English *do*, and its perfect *dadhau* is formed by reduplication, like English *did*.

Verbal Inflexions.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

200. Verbs are of two kinds, primary and derivative. All the strong verbs are of primary origin; the weak verbs are of secondary formation. To **bear** is a primary verb, because it is formed directly from the root, **bar**; but **tell**, as we have seen (p. 157), is formed from the nominal theme, **tale**, and is therefore a derivative verb.

The root is the significant element in the verb, to which are added endings to mark **person, tense,** or **mood.**

Sometimes the personal terminations are added directly to the verbal root, as in **do-st, do-th,** or by means of a connecting vowel, as in **lov-e-st, lov-e-th.**

The person-endings were originally pronominal roots placed *after*, and compounded with, the verbal

root or theme, as if we were to say **love-I, love-thou, love-he,** &c.

201. The suffix of the **first person** singular, was originally **m** (for *mi*), which we still retain in the verb, **a-m.**

Cp. Lat. **su-m,** Gr. *ἐ-μι,* Sansk. **as-mi** = *I am,* Ger. **bin,** O.H.G. *pim,* O.E. (Northern) *beom, I be.*

202. The suffix of the **second person** singular is **-st**; it was originally **-t,** which can be traced back to a suffix **-ti,** identical in origin with the root of **thou.** In the subjunctive mood this suffix is altogether lost.

The original t occurs in **shal-t, wil-t, ar-t.**

Strong verbs in O.E. lost this t of ti, and the second person singular ends only in **e**; as, **heold-e** = **held-e-st,** *didst hold.*

This **-st** belonged only to *weak* verbs in the earliest period, but it was gradually extended to *strong* verbs in the fourteenth century.

203. The suffix of the **third person** is **-th** (the root of **the, tha-t**) = *he, that.* As early as the eleventh century, in the Northern dialects, **th** was softened to **s**; but the former is now archaic.

In the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared.

204. In modern English we have no plural suffixes.

In O.E. the indicative present plural of all persons ended in **-th** (originally the ending of the second person plural), as (1) **ber-a-th**; (2) **ber-a-th**; (3) **ber-a-th.**

The past indicative and the subjunctive (present and past) ended all their persons in **-n** (the original suffix of the third person plural); as, subjunctive present **find-e-n**; indicative past, **fund-o-n,** and subjunctive past, **fund-e-n,** *or* **fund-o-n.**

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find the Southern dialect keeping **-th** for the present plural indicative, the Midland **-n**, and the Northern dropping all endings, or taking **-s** in the second and third persons. (See § 49, p. 31).

In O.E. the personal endings were often dropped when the pronoun followed the verbs; as gâ *ge* = gath *ge* (go ye); ete *we* = eten *we* (eat we, let us eat).

The plural in **-en** was in use up to the middle of the sixteenth century, and a few examples are to be found in Spenser and Shakespeare; Hall, (contemporary with Milton) uses it in his Satires, *e.g.*

"And angry bullets *whistlen* at his ear."
vi. 46.

In O.E. the imperative plural ended in **-th**, as *nim-ath, take ye.* In M.E. this ending was kept up in the Midland and Southern dialects, but not in the Northern dialect, where **-s** was used instead of it.

205. Old English Conjugation of Verbs.

STRONG VERBS.

Active Voice.

Nim-an, to take.

Pres. Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
nim-an	nam	num-en

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. ic nim-e	we nim-ath
2. thû nim-est	ge nim-ath
3. he nim-eth	hi nim-ath

Past Tense.

1. ic nam	we nam-on
2. thû nâm-e	ge nam-on
3. he nam	hi nam-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. ic nim-e	we nim-en
2. thû nim-e	ge nim-en
3. he nim-e	hi nim-en

Past Tense.

1. ic nâm-e	we nâm-en[1]
2. thû nâm-e	ge nâm-en
3. he nâm-e	hi nâm-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

nim	nim-ath

Simple Inf.	Pres. Part.
nim-an	nim-ende
Dative Inf.	**Pass. Part.**
nim-anne	num-en

WEAK VERBS.

Active Voice.

Infin.	Preterite.	Pas. Part.
ner-*i*-an (*save*)	ner-*e*-de	ner-*e*-d
luf-*i*-an (*love*)	luf-*o*-de	luf-*o*-d
hŷr-an (*hear*)	hŷr-de	hŷr-*e*-d

[1] The oldest form of the past subjunctive plural ending was *-en*, which afterwards became *-on*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. neri-e, lufig-e, hŷr-e	1. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath
2. neri-est, luf-ast, hŷr-est	2. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath
3. ner-eth, luf-ath, hŷr-eth	3. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath

Past Tense.

1. ner-*e*-de, luf-*o*-de, hŷr-de	1. ner-*e*-d-on, luf-*o*-d-on, hŷr-d-on
2. ner-*e*-de-st, luf-*o* de-st, hŷr-de-st	2. ner-*e*-d-on, luf-*o*-d-on, hŷr-d-on
3. ner-*e*-de, luf-*o* de, hŷr-de	3. ner-*e*-d-on, luf-*o*-d-on, hŷr-d-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. 2. 3. neri-e, lufig-e, hŷr-e	1. 2. 3. neri-en, lufig-en, hŷr-en

Imperfect Tense.

1. 2. 3. ner-*e*-de, luf-*o*-de, hŷr-de	1. 2. 3. ner-*e*-d-en, luf-*o*-d-en, hŷr-d-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Plur.
2. ner-e, luf-a, hŷr	2. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath

Simple Infin.
neri-an, lufi-an, hŷr-an

Dative Infin.
neri-anne, lufi-anne, hŷr-anne

Pres. Participle.
neri-ende, lufig-ende, hŷr-ende

Pass. Participle.
ner-*e*-d, luf-*o*-d, hŷr-*e*-d

Infinitive Mood.

206. The infinitive is simply an abstract noun. In O.E. the infinitive ending was **-an**, as **drinc-an**, *to drink*.

In the twelfth and following centuries, this **-an** became **-en** (**-in**) or **e**.

In Wickliffe, the suffix is for the most part **-e**; in Chaucer **-en** or **-e**. This **-e** after a time became silent, and the infinitive was only distinguished by the preposition **to** (except after an auxiliary verb), which at first belonged only to the dative or gerundial infinitive.

"As ha schulde *stupin* and *stracche* forth that swire (neck)."
Juliana, B. p. 73, A.D. 1210.

"In ful a bitter bath *bathien* ich schal naked."
O. E. *Miscell.* p. 180, A.D. 1246.

"In a bytter bath ich schal *bathe* naked."
Ib. p. 181, later version.

"To *bakbite*, and to *bosten*: and *bere* fals witnesse."
Piers Plowman, B. ii. 80.

The infinitive in O.E. was inflected for the dative by the suffix **-e**, and was governed by the preposition **to**; as, **tô gehyrann-e**, *to hear*. This is sometimes called the **gerundial** infinitive, in contradistinction to the simple or uninflected infinitive.

It was used chiefly to express purpose; it translated also Lat. supines, gerunds, future participles, and *ut* with the subjunctive; as, "what went ye out *for to see*," "he is *to blame*," &c.

Latin supine in *-um*.

"Sôthlîce ût eode se sædere his sæd *tô sâwenne*."
= Verily outwent the sower to sow his seed.
Matt. xiii. 4.

Latin periphrastic conjugation in *-rus* and *-dus*.

"We selfe mâgon seôthan thâ thing the *tô seôthenne* sind, and brædan thâ thing the *tô brædenne* sind."
= We ourselves may seethe the things that are to be sodden, and roast the things that are to be roasted.
ÆLFRIC.

"Hit is sceamu *tô tellanne*, ac hit ne thûhte him nân sceamu *tô dônne*."
= It is shameful to tell, but it appeared to him no shame to do.—*Chronicle*, A.D. 1052.

Latin supine in *-u*.

"Êthe ... *tô findanne*."
= Easy to find.
Ps. lxxvi. 16.

Latin genitive of gerund.

"Mihte *tô forlêtenne*."
= Power of forgiving, *or* to forgive.
John xix. 10.

Sometimes we find the dative infinitive used to mark the future.

"Thone calic þe ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe."
= The cup that I have to drink.
Matt. xx. 22.
"*Ic tô drincenne hæbbe*."
= Lat. *bibiturus sum*.

The gerundial ending not only took the same form as the simple infinitive, but it was often confounded with the present participle in *-ende*, or *-inde* (later *-inge*) in E.E. and M.E.

"Thenne beginne we to *fleonne* ant turneth to the lufte, ant this is al that we doth te *deruen* cristene men ant *eggin* to then uuele."—*Juliana*, p. 44.
"The synfulle (fasteth) for to *clensen* him, the rightwise for to *witiende* his rightwisnesse."—*O.E. Hom.* II. p. 57.

"And ȝaf it to thre hondred vultures to *etynge.*"—*Trevisa*, III. p. 131. Caxton's version has "*for to ete.*"

"Also he fonde up . . newe manere titles and strikes to write amonge the lettres that were liȝtere *to wrytinge* and *to spekynge.*"—*Ib.* III. p. 249.

That the participle in -nde could be confounded with the inf. in -en is seen in the following passage:—

"But thanke God of heuen for that he hath the ȝeuene
And so thou schalt, my douȝtir, a good lijf *lyvande.*"
Babees Book, p. 43.

Participles.

207. The **present** participle is formed by the suffix **-ing**, which has replaced M.E. **-inde, -ende**; O.E. **-end.**

The modern form **-ing** made its appearance in the Southern dialects in the latter part of the twelfth century; but the older form in *-ande* was retained in the Northern dialects up to a very late period. (Cp. Ben Jonson's *Sad Shepherd*, ii. 2). Spenser has the archaic forms *glitterand* and *trenchand* for *glittering* and *trenchant.*

This change of **-inde** to **-ing** has caused great confusion between verbal nouns in **-ing** (O.E. **-ung**) and participles in **-ing** (see p. 133).

"Wommen ȝeueth lyf and *fedynde* to Kynges."
Trevisa, III. p. 183.

Here *fedynde* = *feeding* = *sustenance.* See *O.E. Hom.* II. p. 177, l. 23.

The **Passive** participle in the oldest period had a prefix **ge**, which, after the Norman Conquest, was

reduced to (i, y, e). Milton has *yclept* = *called.* He wrongly adds it to a present participle in "star *y-pointing.*"

The passive participle of all strong verbs ended in -en. In the thirteenth century we find n falling away; as, *ifunde* = *found; ibunde* = *bound;* very many of our strong verbs have lost their passive participles, and others at one time showed a tendency to do the same. Cp. *spoke* and *eat* in Shakspeare, for *spoken* and *eaten.*

The passive participle of weak verbs ended in -d; as, lov-e-d. The primitive form was -th, which is still preserved in un-cou-th, literally *unknown;* couth (O.E. cuth) being the p.p. of can.

The adjectival character of the verbal suffixes -en (-n) and -ed, is seen by comparing them with the endings in *gold-en, silken; hot-headed, one-eyed,* &c.

Anomalous Verbs.

208. Be. The conjugation of the substantive verb contains three distinct roots, as, be, was.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. am	1. are
2. art	2. are
3. is	3. are

Past Tense.

1. was	1. were
2. wast, wert*	2. were
3. was	3. were

* Obsolete.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1, 2, 3. be	1, 2, 3. be

Past Tense.

1, 2, 3. were 2. wert	1, 2, 3. were

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. be	2. be

Infinitive	to be
Present Participle	being
Passive Participle	been

The oldest forms are :—

Pres. indic. sing.		1. eo-m, beo-m, beo
		2. ear-t, bis-t
		3. is, bi-th
	Plural 1, 2, 3.	sind, sind-on / beo-th / ar-on
Past indic. sing.		1. wæs
		2. wǽre
		3. wæs
,, ,, plur.	1, 2, 3.	wǽr-on
Pres. subj. sing.	1, 2, 3.	wes-e, beo, sí
,, ,, plur.	1, 2, 3.	wes-en, beo-n, sí-n
Past. subj. sing.	1, 2, 3.	wǽr-e
,, ,, plur.	1, 2, 3.	wǽr-en
Imper. sing.	2.	wes, beo
,, plur.	2.	wes-ath, beo-th
Infin.		wes-an, beo-n
Act. part.		wes-ende
Pass. part.		gewes-en

In the thirteenth century **sindon** (are) gives place to **beoth**, or **beth**. In M.E. **are** becomes very common.

Wesan (infin.) seems to have dropped out of use in the twelfth century, leaving **beon** or **ben** as the ordinary form in use. About the same time **gewesen** (p.p.) disappeared, and a new p.p. **ibeon** (ben) came into use.

In M.E. we find the pres. part. **be-ende** = *be-ing*.

Negative forms were common in the first three periods. Cp. O.E. **neom** (am not), **neart** (art not), **nis** (is not), **næs** (was not), **nǽron** (were not).

A-m (= *ar-m* = *as-m*) contains the root **as**, and **m**, the ending of the first person.

Ar-t (= *as-t*) has the old **-t** of the second person, as in *shal-t*, *wil-t*, &c.

Is (= *as* = *as-th*) has lost its suffix **-th**.

Are (= *ase*) represents the old Northern **ar-on**, and is of Scandinavian origin. It has altogether replaced the O.E. *sind*.

Was. This is the past tense of the strong verb, **wesan** *to be*. It has therefore no endings to mark the first and third persons.

Was-t. The true form would be **were** (O.E. *wære*) but **wast** arose in the fourteenth century, through the use of **was** as a second person in Northern writers of the thirteenth century.

> "With ropes *were* thou bounde."
> FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.
> "How *were* thow than baptized?"
> MERLIN, p. 428.
> "Before the sun, before the heavens thou *wert*."
> MILTON, *Par. Lost*.

Wer-t for **wast** has evidently been formed from the older *were* (=*wǽre*). It has established itself as a subjunctive form.

Were (= *wes-en*) has, like **are**, lost its personal endings.

The root **be** was conjugated in the present tense, indicative, as late as Milton's time.

I be	we be	(bin)*
thou beest	ye be	,,
he be	they be	,,

"If thou *beest* he."—MILTON, *P. L.* I. 84.
"If thou *be'st* civil."
BEAUMONT and FLETCHER, I. p. 96.
"I think it *be* thine indeed."—*Hamlet.*

"We *are* true men, we *are* no spies, we *be* twelve brethren."
—*Gen.* xlii. 32.
"For you *be* as untrue as I."
HEYWOOD, *The Four P.P.*
"The Philistines *be* upon thee."—*Judges*, xvi. 9.

In M.E. **beth** and **bes** are used for the third pers. sing. indic.; and for the third pers. future, instead of our *shall be.*

209. **Worth** = *be.*

This verb occurs in the English Bible.

"Wo *worth* the day"
=woe be to the day.—*Ezek.* xxx. 2.
"Wo *worth* the faire gemme vertuelesse!
Wo *worth* that herb also that doth no boote!
Wo *worth* that beauté that is routheles!
Wo *worth* that wyght that tret ech under foote!"
CHAUCER, *Tr. & Cr.* II. 49. ll. 344–7.

The O.E. *weorthan* (pret. *wearth*, p.p. *worden*) *to become*, occasionally replaced *wesan* and *beon*, *to be.* In M E. *worthe* = *to be*, as well as *to become.* In the third person **worth** = *shall be.*

"What shal *worthe* of us."—*M. Arth.* l. 1817, ed. Furnivall.
"For-þi I conseille alle þe comune to lat the catte *worthe.*"
Piers Plowman, B. Prol. l. 187.
"To-morwe *worth* ymade þe maydenes bruydale."
Ib. II. l. 43.
"This maide *werth* a slepe."—*Early Eng. Poems*, xxi. 38.

* Archaic.

210. Can.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. can	1. can
2. canst	2. can
3. can	3. can

Past Tense.

1. could	1. could
2. couldst (couldest)	2. could
3. could	3. could

In O.E. **can** was thus conjugated :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. can, con	1. cunn-on
	2. can-st	2. ,,
	3. can	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. cu-the	1. cu-th-on
	2. cu-th-est	2. ,,
	3. cu-the	3. ,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. cunn-e	1, 2, 3. cunn-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. cu-the	1, 2, 3. cu-th-on
Pass. Part.	cu-th	Infin. cunn-an

Can (1st and 3rd persons) has no personal suffix, because it was originally a strong form signifying *I knew*. Cp. *shall*, *may*, *wot*, &c.

Coul-d (= O.E. *cu-the*, M.E. *couthe*, *cou-de*) is a weak form. The letter **l** has crept in from false analogy to the past tenses of *shall* and *will*.

"And the Normans ne *couthe* speke tho bote hor owe speche."
—*Spec. of E. Eng.* 1. A. 215.

The verb **can** (**con**) once signified *to be able*, *to know*.

"Thou shalt never *conne* knowen."
CHAUCER.
"Thou schalt not *kunne* seie nay."
PECOCK, *Skent's Spec.* p. 50
"I *can* many a quaint game."
The World and the Child, O.E. Plays, I. p. 245.
"I trow thou *canst* but little skill of play."—*Ib.* I. p. 261.
"For we be clerks all, and *can* our neck verse."
HICKSCORNER, *O.E. Plays,* I. p. 159.
"A mous that moche good *couthe* (knew)."
Piers Plowman, B. p. 8.
"O she *coukl* the art of woman most feelingly."
WEBSTER, ed. Dyce, p. 250.

Shakespeare has "to *con* thanks" = *to acknowledge* or *give thanks.*

"I *can* thee thank."—*The Four Elements, O.E. Plays,* I. p. 47.
"So give me som thynge that I may *conne* the thanke for."
Merlin, p. 73.
"Lutel thonk ye me *cuthe.*"—*O.E. Misc.* p. 81, l. 274.
"Thai *conned* [*cund* C.] him ful litel thank."
Cursor Mundi, F. l. 6398.

Con, *learn, study* (*con* a lesson), has conned for past tense and p.p.

Cunning (adj.) = *knowing,* is a present participle of **can,** or **con.** It is also found as an abstract noun = *knowledge.*

"And yhit thai er ful *unkunand.*"
HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 152.
"*Cunning* Latin books."
The Four Elements, O.E. Plays, I. 7.
"Works of *cunning.*"—*Ib.*
"Nother (neither) virtue nor no other *cunning.*"
Ib. p. 22.

Couth in **uncouth** is the old p.p. of **can.** See Chaucer's *C. T. Prol.* l. 14.

"Mayde to the he send (sends) his sonde (message)
And wilneth (wishes) for to beo (be) the *cuth* (known)."
O.E. Misc. p. 96, l. 104.

211. Dare.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. dare	1. dare
2. darest (dar'st)	2. dare
3. dares (dare)	3. dare

Past Tense.

1. durst	1. durst
2. durst	2. durst
3. durst	3. durst

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	*Past Tense.*
Sing. 1, 2, 3. dare	Sing. 1, 2, 3. durst
Plur. 1, 2, 3. dare	Plur. 1, 2, 3. durst

Old English conjugation of **Dare.**

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. dear	1. durr-on
	2. dears-t	2. ,,
	3. dear	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. dors-te	1. dors-t-on
	2. dors-t-est	2. ,,
	3. dors-te	3. ,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. durr-e	1, 2, 3. durr-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. dors-te	1, 2, 3. dorst-on
Inf.	durr-an	

Dare. The root is *dars*, which appears in the past tense, **durst.**

The old 3rd person singular **dare** (M.E. *dar*) has given place to **dares**, the former being used only in

the subjunctive mood. Cp. *Tempest*, iii. 2, *Rich. II.* v. 5.

Dare, *to challenge*, makes a new past tense and p.p. **dared**. Cp. **owe, ought**, and **owed**.

212. Shall.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. **shall**	1. **shall**
2. **shalt**	2. **shall**
3. **shall**	3. **shall**

Past Tense.

1. **should**	1. **should**
2. **shouldst, shouldest**	2. **should**
3. **should**	3. **should**

Shall was conjugated in O.E. as follows :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. sceal	1. scul-on
	2. sceal-t	2. ,,
	3. sceal	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. sceol-de	1. sceol-d-on
	2. sceol-d-est	2. ,,
	3. sceol-de	3. ,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. scyl-e	1, 2, 3. scyl-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. sceol-de	1, 2, 3. sceol-d-on
Infin.	scul-an	

One of the oldest senses of **shall** is *owe*.

"And by that feith I *shal* to God and yow."
CHAUCER, *Tr. and Cr.* l. 1600

" Voryef me thet ich the *ssel*."
= Forgive me that I owe thee.
Ayenbite, p. 115.
" Hu micel *scealt* thû."
= How much owest thou.
Luke xvi. 5.
" Ân, se hym *sceolde* tŷn thûsend punda."
= One that owed him ten thousand pounds.
Matt. xviii. 24.

Another early meaning arising from the notion of debt is obligation, necessity; hence **shall** often signifies *ought, must.*

" Be ûre æ he *sceal* sweltan."
= By our law he ought to die.
John xix. 7.
" Men seyn, sche *schalle* endure in that forme."
MAUNDEVILLE, p. 4.
" Thou *shalt* not steal."
" You *should* listen more attentively."

It must be recollected that **shall** is only a tense auxiliary, that is a sign of the future, in the *first* person. The following doggerel lines point out the distinctive uses of **shall** and **will.**

" In the first person simply **shall** foretells,
In **will** a threat, or else a promise dwells;
Shall, in the second and the third, does threat;
Will simply then foretells a future feat."

Grimm supposes that the original meaning of **shal** is *I have killed*, I must pay the fine or (*wergeld*); hence, I am obliged, I must. The idea of *failure, offence, guilt*, is seen in Sansk. *skhal, to fail*; Lat. *scelus, fault, crime.*

A strange mingling of *should* and *owe* occurs in Fabyan's *Chronicle*, p. 257.

" Obedience that he *should owe* (= owed) to the see of Canterbury."

213. Will.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. will	1. will
2. wilt	2. will
3. will	3. will

Past Tense.

1. would	1. would
2. wouldst	2. would
3. would	3. would

O.E. conjugation of will.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. wile, wille	1. will-ath
	2. wil-t	2. ,,
	3. wile	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. wol-de	1. wol-d-on
	2. wol-d-est	2. ,,
	3. wol-de	3. ,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. wille	1, 2, 3. will-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. wol-de	1, 2, 3. wol-d-on
Infin.	will-an	Pres. Part. will-ende

The original meaning of will is *to desire, wish* (cp. Lat. *volo*).

In M.E. we find a form wol, *will*, which still survives in won't = *wol not*. Nill = *will not*, occurs in *Hamlet*, v. 1; *Taming of the Shrew*, ii. 1.

In O.E. we find two weak verbs, willan and willian, *to desire, wish*. Willan survives in the verb will, *to desire, be*

willing, to exercise the will, which is conjugated regularly as an independent verb: 1. will, 2. willest, 3. willeth, wills, &c., past tense willed. But we often find in the older periods the two forms mixed up.

"Wel aȝte ihc *willen* hire to wif."
Fl. and Bl. p. 67.

"They ne shuld not *willen* so."
CHAUCER, R. 6923.

"Gif thu *wilt*, thu miht me geclænsian: Ic *wille*; beo geclænsod."
="If thou *wilt*, thou mayest make me clean. I *will*; be cleansed."—*Matt.* viii. 2, 3.

"Abraham *wald* in his liue,
That Ysaac had wed a wiue."
Cursor Mundi, G. l. 3215.

"Abraham *willed* in his lyue,
That Isaac hadde weddede a wyue."
Ib. T.

"For in evil, the best condition is not to *will*; the second, not to *can*."—BACON, *Ess.* xi.

The old p.p. **wold** for wild, or willed, was in use as late as the beginning of the sixteenth century.

"The fomy bridel with the bitte of gold,
Governeth he ryght as himselfe hath *wolde*."
CHAUCER, *Leg. Didonis*, l. 284.

"How be it he myghte have entred the cytie if he had *wolde*. (= wished).—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 625.

214. May.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. **may**	1. **may**
2. **mayst, mayest**	2. **may**
3. **may**	3. **may**

Past Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. might	1. might
2. mightst, mightest	2. might
3. might	3. might

The oldest forms of **may** are :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. mæg	1. mâgon
	2. meah-t	2. ,,
	3. mæg.	3. ,,
Past. Indic.	1. meah-te	1. meah-t-on
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. mâge	1, 2, 3. mâg-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. meah-te	1, 2, 3. meah-t-on
Infin. mag-an	Pres. Part. mæg-ende.	Pass. Part. meah-t

The **y** in **may** represents an older **g** (cp. Ger. *mögen*). Sometimes **g** passes into **w**, hence the M.E. **I mow**, *I may;* **I mought**, *I might;* pres. part. **mowende, mowynge**; pass. part. **moght.**

Mayst is a new form that arose in M.E. for **mih-t**, (See Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, p. 3).

May has the force of the Lat. *posse, to be able.* It is the preterite of an old root mag, to *increase, grow*, which exists in mai-n, (O.E. mæg-en), migh-t.

"Helle gatu ne *mâgon* ongeân þe."
= Hell's gates *cannot prevail* against thee.
Matt. xvi. 18.

"Thatt ifell gast *ma*33 oferr tha
Thatt follȝhen barness thæwess."
= The evil ghost *has power* over those that follow bairns' habits.
Orm. I. p. 279.

"If thou *maist* ony thing, help us."
WICKLIFFE, *Mark* ix. 4.

"Thai salle *mow* passe aywhare thai wille."
HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 799ȝ.

"As nere as they shall *mowe* (be able)."
Nat. MSS. I. 20, *Hen. VII.* Quoted in Earle's Phil. of Eng. Tongue, p. 284.
"To lakken *mowynge* (power) to done yuel."
CHAUCER, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 124.

215. Owe.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
owe	1. owe
2. owest	2. owe
3. oweth	3. owe

Past Tense.

1. ought	1. ought
2. oughtest	2. ought
3. ought	3. ought

Inf. owe Pres. Part. owing

O.E. forms of Owe :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. âh	1. âg-on
	2. âg-e	2. ,,
	3. âh	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. âh-te	1, 2, 3. âh-t-on

Infin. âg-an; Pres. Part. âg-ende; Pass. Part. âg-en.

In M.E. we find some new forms, as, owest (= âge), ought and owed (= agen, p.p.).

The original meaning of **owe** is *to possess, have*, whence the secondary notion, *to have as a duty, to owe, to be under an obligation.*

Oughte is of course a weak past tense, and is now

used as a present and past tense to signify moral obligation.

When **owe** signifies to be in debt, it is conjugated regularly.

1. **Owe**, 2. **owest**, 3. **owes**, **oweth**, &c.; past tense and p.p. **owed**.

Ought, in older writers, is used as the past tense of **owe**, *to be in debt*.

"Thu sulde thet thou *ouhtest*."
=Thou didst pay what thou didst *owe*.
Ancren Riwle, p. 406.

"He *owðte* to him 10,000 talents."
WICKLIFFE, *Matt.* xviii. 24.

"One of his fellow servants which *ought* him an hundred pence."—BECON, I. 154.

"There of the Knight, the which that castle *ought*,
To make abode that night he greatly was besought."
SPENSER, *F. Q.* VI. iii. 2.

See Shakspeare's 1 *Henry IV.* iii. 3.

Own is a derivative of **owe**.

Examples of **owe** as an independent verb:—

"Hwæt dô ic thæt ic êce lîf *âge?*"
=What must I do that I may have everlasting life?
Mark, x. 17.

"*Ahte* ic geweald."
=Had I power.—*Cæd.* p. 23, l. 32.

"The mon the lutel *ah*."
=The man that has little.—*Laz.* 3058.

"To makien hire cwen of al thet he *ouhte*."
=To make her queen of all that he possessed.
Ancren Riwle, p. 390.

"Steuen that the lond *auht*."
R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 3092.

"Ye shal *owe* and have everlasting life."
Gest. Rom. p. 29.

" I am not worthy of the wealth I *owe*."
All's Well that Ends Well, II. 5.
" *Owing* her heart, what need you doubt her ear."
FORD.

Owe as an auxiliary appears in Laȝamon's Brut, l. 8289, " he *ah* to don" = *he has to do, he should do.*

" Evel *owe* no mon to do to other."
Cursor Mundi, T. l. 1973.

216. Must.

Must was originally the past tense of the old verb, *motan* (Ger. *müssen*) *to be able, be obliged:* it is now used in all persons and tenses, to denote necessity and obligation.

The O.E. forms are:—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. môt	1. mô-t-on
	2. môs-t	2. ,,
	3. môt	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. môs-te	1, 2, 3. môs-t-on

The old verb **mot** had the sense of *may, can, must*, &c.; and **must** = *might, could*, &c.

In the sense of *may, mot* is found as late as 1522 in *The World and the Child.*

" But, Sir Frere, evil *mot* thou the [thrive]."
O.E. Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. 257.

Spenser occasionally employs it though it had become archaic in his time (see *Faerie Queene*, i. 2, 37).

The **s** in **must** does not belong to the root, but was inserted to unite the suffix **-t** of the second person, and **-te** of the past tense to the root; **most** (second person) = **mot-s-t** = **mot-t.**

O.E. **wâst** (knowest) = **wat-s-t**; **mo-s-te** (past tense) = **mot-s-te** = **mot-te**; O.E. **wiste** (knew) = **wit-s-te** = **wit-te.**

217. Wit.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. wot	1. wot
2. wot [wottest] [1]	2. wot
3. wot [wotteth]	3. wot

Past Tense.

1. wist [wotted]	1. wist [wotted]
2. wist	2. wist [wotted]
3. wist [wotted]	3. wist [wotted]

Inf. to wit Pres. Part. witting [wotting]

The O.E. *witan* was thus conjugated :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. wât	1. wit-on
	2. wâs-t	2. ,,
	3. wât	1, 2, 3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. wis-te	wis-t-on
Infin. wit-an.	Pres. Part. wit-ende.	Pass. Part. wit-en. [M.E. iwis-t].

Wot was originally the perfect of the root **wit** (cp. Lat. *video*, Gr. *οἶδα*, *I know*, from *ἰδεῖν*, *to see*), and meant "I have seen," hence "I know."

Its infinitive **to wit** is used now only as an adverb = *namely*.

The pres. part. exists in **wittingly**.

For the presence of **s** in **wist**, see **must**, § 216, p. 181.

[1] The words in brackets are later formations.

The pass. part. appears in **unwist,** *unknown, undiscovered* (Surrey); and in the old proverb, "beware of *had-I-wist*," *i.e.* "beware of saying regretfully *had I known.*"

"Dead long ygoe, I *wote*, thou haddest bin."
SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 2, 20.
See *Gen.* xxi. 26.

"But *wottest* thou what I say, man."
The World and the Child, O.E. Plays, I. p. 264.

"Again, who *wotteth* not what words were spoken against St. Paul."—JEWEL'S *Apol.* ed. Jelf, p. 3. See *Gen.* xxxix. 8.

"He *wist* not what to say."—*Mark* ix. 6.

"And why he left your court, the gods themselves, *wotting* no more than I, are ignorant."—*Winter's Tale*, iii. 2.

"I do thee well *to wit.*"
J. HEYWOOD, *the Pardoner and the Friar.*

"Wouldest thou *wit?*"—*Everyman, O.E. Plays*, I. p. 103.

"For, *wit* thou well, thou shalt make none attorney."—*Ib.*

"I woll handle my captive so,
That he shall not well *wot* wither to go."
Jack Juggler, O.E. Plays, II. p. 115.

218. **Do,** in "this will do," has the sense of the Lat. *valere.* It represents the O.E. **dugan,** E.E. **duhen,** *avail, be good,* (Ger. *taugen*) cp. *doughty* = *valiant.*

O.E. dug-an.

Pres. Indic. Sing.	1.	deâh
	2.	dug-e
	3.	deâh
,, ,, Plur.	1, 2, 3.	dug-on
Past. Indic. Sing.		doh-te

"Ring ne broche nabbe ȝe...ne no swuch thing thet ou ne *deih* [= *deah*]."
= Have neither ring nor broach, nor any such thing that *is* not *good* for you to have.—*Ancren Riwle*, p. 421.

"And sau that his dede litel *doht* [= *did*, availed]."
Met. Hom. p. 149.

"What *dowes* me the dedayn."
=What avails me the displeasure.
Allit. Poems, p. 90.
"That noȝt *dowed* bot the deth in the depe stremez."
=That nought availed, but the death in the deep streams.
Ib. p. 47.

219. **Own** = *grant, confess*, has probably arisen out of O.E. an, (E.E. on) = *I grant*, unn-on, *we grant;* O.E. unnan (Ger. gönnen), *to grant.*

"Ich *on* wel that ȝe witen."
=I own well that ye know.—*Kath.* 1761.
"ȝif thu hit wel *unnest.*"
=If thou well concedest it.—*Ancren Riwle*, p. 282.

220. **Mun** = *shall, must.*

"I *mun* be married a Sunday."
Ralph Roister Douster, before 1553.

In the fourteenth century *mun* (*mon*) as an auxiliary verb = *shall, must*, was very common in the Northern dialects.

"I *mun* walke on mi way."—*Ant. Arth.* xxv. 3.
"——than *mon* he gyf lyght
Als fer als the sone dose and ferrer."
HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.
"Thai thoght that kynd him *mond* forbede."
=They thought that nature would forbid him.
C. Mundi, C. l. 1105.

The original meaning of *mun, mon*, was *I have remembered;* hence, *I intend, mind.*

	Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
O.E.	ge-man	ge-munde	ge-munan (meminisse)
Icel.	man }	munda }	muna (recordari)
	mun }	munna }	munu } (μέλλειν)
			mundu }

"The hertes costes we agen to *munen*."
= We ought to remember the hart's habits.
O.E. Misc. p. 12. l. 370.

"He wolde *mone*."
= He would remember.
R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 4811.

221. The verb need, when followed by an infinitive, sometimes loses its personal ending -s, as "it *need*[1] not be."

In O.E. to need meant only to *compel, force;* but from a primitive *thurfan* (Ger. *dürfen*) *to need*, was formed the following:—

Pres. Indic. Sing.	1.	thearf	I need
	2.	thearf-t	Thou needest
	3.	thearf	He needs
„ „ Plur.	1, 2, 3.	thurf-on	We need, &c.

In M.E. we find *thar* for *tharf*.

"Have thou ynough, what *thar* the recche or care."
= If thou have enough, why needeth thee reck or care.
CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5911.

Auxiliary Verbs.

222. Auxiliary verbs supply the places of verbal suffixes to form voice, mood, and tense.

The passive voice is expressed by the passive participle, and the verb **to be**.

In O.E. *weorthan* and *wesan* were used with the passive participle to form the passive voice.

Should and **would** are often used as signs of the subjunctive mood.

The use of *would*, as an auxiliary of the past subjunctive, is as early as the thirteenth century.

[1] Some explain *need* as subjunctive = *would need;* but cp. *me thinc* in M.E. for *me-thinks*.

Let is a sign of the imperative mood, as, *let* us go = *go we.* See § 180, p. 132. In M.E. *let* was used in the same way as *do* = *cause, make.*

The tense auxiliaries are (1) **have, had**; and **is, was** (with intransitive verbs) for the perfect tenses; as, "he *has asked*," "he *is come.*"

(2) **Shall** and **will** for the future; but other shades of a future tense may be expressed by various modes, as, "I *am going* to see him;" "I *am about* to see him;" "I *am upon the point* of seeing him," &c.

(3) **Do** and **did** are used for forming emphatic tenses, as, "I *do* see," "I *did* see."

Do and **did** originally had a *causative* sense before another verb in the infinitive.

"Thou most *do* me it have."
= Thou must *cause* me to have it.
Gamelyn, l. 159.
"And som-tyme *doth* Theseus hem to reste."
= And sometimes Theseus *makes* them to rest.
Knightes Tale.

In the fourteenth century **did** was not uncommon as a mere tense auxiliary.

"Summe gouleden and summe *dude* breune."
= Some yelled and others did burn.—*O.E. Misc.* p. 224.

In M.E. **gan**, *can, con* (began) was used for **did.**

"His stede he *gan* bistride
And forth he *gan* ride."—*Horn.* p. 22.
"Hi *gunnen* ut ride,
And funden on a grene
A geaunt."—*Ib.* p. 22.
"Gret ioi *can* his frendes mak[e]."
Cursor Mundi, C. l. 3016.
"Criste of hym his crowne *con* take."
Pol. Rel. and Love Poems, p. 97, l. 121.

CHAPTER XI.

Adverbs.

223. **Adverbs** are, for the most part, abbreviations of words or phrases, or cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

According to their origin or form, we may divide them into the following classes :—

224. I. Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

Genitive.—Need-s = *of necessity;* M.E. *nedes;* E.E. *nēde* (instr.).

A-night-s, now-a-day-s, al-way-s, be-time-s, el-se (O.E. *elles*), eft-soon-s, un-a-ware-s, on-ce, twi-ce, thri-ce, whil-s-t, a-mid-s-t, a-mong-s-t, be-twi-x-t.

Twice = O.E. *twi-wa*, E.E. *twi-e*, M.E. *twies;* thrice = O.E. *thri-wa*, E.E. *thrie*, M.E. *thries;* *-wa* = *-war* = *time;* once, O.E. *æne*, E.E. *ene*, M.E. *an-es, on-es, an-s, on-s.*

The -st in *whilst*, &c. represents an older -es(-s). Cp. M.E. *whil-es, amidd-es, among-es*, &c.

Dative.—Whil-om (O.E. *hwil-um*), from *while* = *time.* Seld-om (O.E. *seld-um*) from O.E. *seld* = *rare.*

All adverbs ending in -meal once had the dative suffix -um. Cp. O.E. *lim-mæl-um* = *limb-meal.* The suffix *-um* formed distributives like Latin -im. Cp. M.E. *table-mele* = Latin tabillatim.—Palladius on *Husbondrie,* p. 66.

Little by little = M.E. *lytlum* and *lytlum.*

Accusative.—Alway (O.E. *ealne-weg*), otherwise, sometime, the while, now-a-day, backward, &c.

Prepositional Forms.—The chief prepositions used to form adverbial expressions are, **a, (an), on, in, at, of, be, (by), to.**

An = *in, on:* **anon** = *in one second.* In M.E. we find *on-an* = *anon.*

A = *in, on:* **a**-bed, **a**-day, **a**-sleep, **a**-loft, &c.; **a**-broad, **a**-cold, **a**-good, **a**-twain, &c.

On, in: **on** sleep, **on** high, **in**-deed, **in** vain, **in** short, **in** two, &c.

At: **at** jar, **at** odds, **at** large, **at** night, **at** length, **at** best, **at** first, &c.

Of (for **a**): **of** kin, **of** late, **of** old, **of** new; **Of** (for older genitives), **of** a truth, **of** right.

Be, by: **be**-times, **be**-cause, **by** turns, **by** degrees, **by** hundreds.

To: **to**-day, **to**-night, **to**-gether.

Per: **per**-chance, **per**-haps.

An (=in, on) occurs in E.E. and M.E. before words beginning with a *vowel* or *h;* as, *an eve, in the evening; an honde, in hand.*

A is used before words beginning with a consonant.

"Ich am nu elder than ich was *a* wintre and *a* lore."—*O.E. Hom.* ii. 220.

This **a** was a separate word as late as the seventeenth century. It is very common before verbal nouns. Cp. **a**-fishing, **a**-hunting, **a**-weeping.

As **on** is only another form of **an**, it has replaced *an* before a vowel.

"Set our teeth *an* edge [= *on* edge]."
The Four Book of Princes, p. 116.

A and on, sometimes occur side by side: a-board and on board, a-ground and on ground.

An takes the place of in, in the phrase "ever and anon;" where *an-on* = M.E. in *oon*, in one state.

"*Ever in oon.*"—CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p. 15.
"Ever and *anon* it (earth) must turn about."
HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 1.

Sometimes *an end* = *in oon* = *continually*.

As of takes the place of a in *akin*, &c. so a sometimes takes the place of of.

"I have heard *a* the horses walking *a'* (on) the top of Paules."
—DEKKER, *Satiromastix*, C. 2.

"What manner *a* man."—BECON.

Cp. "*a* the appel tre" = *o* that appel tre = of the apple tree.—*C. Mundi*, p. 86.

This a for o or of explains; man-*a*-war, justice-*a*-peace (Dekker); two-*a*-clock = two *o'* clock = two *of* the clock; jack-*an*-apes.

In M.E. we find *of* long, *of* new, *of*-fer (afar), and even *of goo* = *ago* (cp. O.E. *of-gân*, to go off).

Be sometimes preceded the dative adverb in O.E. as *be ânfealdum* = *by one fold* = *singly*, from which we have formed our expressions, *by hundreds* and *by fifties* = O.E. *be hundredum* and *be fiftegum*. In E.E. the dative ending dropped, and we have *bi sixe, bi seove*, = by *sixes*, by *sevens*, &c. Cp. *by piecemeal* for *piecemeal*, (Beaumont and Fletcher).

At especially before superlatives is a contraction of *at the*, M.E. *atte*. In O.E. this *the* was in the dative case. *At random* = Fr. *à randon*.

225. Many adjectives are used as adverbs, especially those with irregular comparisons: *far, forth, ful, ill, late, little, much, nigh, near, well.*

Many monosyllabic adjectives are used as adverbs, as, to work **hard**; to talk **fast**; to speak **loud**; to aim **high**.

In the earlier stages of the language, the *adverbial* form was marked by a final **-e**, as, *hard* (adj.), *hard*-**e** (adv.), &c. When this **-e** became silent, then the adjectival and adverbial form became identical.

We can thus easily understand the use of *godly* as adjective and adverb; (cp. "a *godly* life," and "to live *godly*.") In O.E. the distinction was plainly marked, *e.g.*, *god*-**lic** (adj.), *god*-**lic-e** (adv.).

The adverbial **-e** was probably a *dative* suffix. In M.E. we find instances of the use of this **-e**: they pleye *hastiliche* and *swiftliche* (Trevisa).

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the suffix **-ly** was often dropped: as,

"*Foolish* bold." BECON. "*Grievous* sick." SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. "*Wondrous* wise."

The history of *wondrous* (wonderfully) is a curious one. In O.E. the adverb was *wundr-um*, which in M.E. became *wunder*, *wonder*, T.E. *wonders*. In E.E. we find *wunderliche*, in M.E. *wonderli*; and in T.E. *wondersly*. In Ford's works we find "*woundy* bad," *i.e.* *wonderfully* or *very bad*.

226. II. Pronominal Adverbs.

Many adverbs are derived from the pronominal stems, **the, he, who.**

PRONOMINAL STEMS.	PLACE WHERE.	MOTION TO.	MOTION FROM.	TIME WHEN.	MANNER.	CAUSE.
who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why
the	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the
he	here	hither	hence	—	—	—

The suffixes -re and -ther in *the-re, he-re, whe-re, thi-ther*, &c., were originally locative.

The -n in *the-n, whe-n*, &c., is an accusative suffix. See pronouns, § 131, p. 107; § 146, p. 119.

The -ce (M.E. -es), in *then-ce*, &c., represents an older -an, cp. O.E. *than-an* (thence); *heon-an* (hence); *hwan-an* (whence).

The O.E. -an denotes motion from: *ēast-an* = *from the east*; so *thence* = *than-an* = *from that* (place).

The, before comparatives, as, **the** *more* (= O.E. *thî mâre*, Lat. *eo magis*) is the instrumental case of the definite article, **the**.

Lest has lost the instrumental **the**. In O.E. we find *thŷ læs the*, E.E. *les the*, M.E. *leste* = **lest**.

Thus is the instrumental case of **this**.

How (O.E. *hu*, E.E. *hwu*), and **why** (O.E. *hwî*), are the inst. cases of **who**. Cp. *for-why* = *for which* (reason), *wherefore; for-thy* = *for that* (reason), *therefore*.

Yea, ye-s, ye-t, are from a relative stem **ya**, which also had a demonstrative force, as in **yon, yond, yonder**.

That and **so** are often used as *affirmative* adverbs.

In nay, no, not, now, we have a demonstrative stem, **na**.

In O.E. *ne* = *not*.

"Eart thû of thyses leorning-cnihtum? *nic ne* eom ic."
= Art thou of this man's disciples? not I, I am not.
John xviii. 17.

Negatives are often repeated for emphasis:—

"*Ne nân ne* dorste *nân* thing âcsian."
= No one durst ask him anything.
Matt. xxii. 46.

"*Ne* eom ic *nâ* Crist."—*John* i. 18.
"But he *ne* lefte *n*ought for rayn *n*e thonder."
CHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 492.

O.E. ne was also a conjunction = nor. See Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I. i. 28.

Not (= O.E. *nôht*, M.E. *noght*, *nat*) = *no whit*, (nothing), has replaced the old **nâ, ne.** It has already been shown to be an indefinite pronoun. See **aught**, § 164, p. 125.

"Ne wen thu *nawiht* leoue feder that tu affeare me swa = ne lef thu *nawt* leoue feader that tu offeare me swa. Ween thou not dear father that thou may frighten me so."—*Juliana*, pp. 12, 13.
"Ac hit ne helpeth heom *nowiht*."—*O.E. Misc.* p. 152.

Aught, naught, nothing, something, somewhat, muchwhat, anywhit, &c. may be used as adverbs.

So (= O.E. swâ) was used as a relative pronoun in E.E.; from it we derive **also** (O.E. *ealswa*), which, by loss of l, has dwindled down to **as** = M.E. *ase* = E.E. *alse* = O.E. *eal-swa.*

Ay, sometimes used for **yes**, is the same as the adverb **aye** = *ever.*

For ever or aye we find in O.E. a; E.E. o, oo, ay, ey. Cp. O.E. *â-hwær*, *æg-hwær* = *any-where*; E.E. *o-whar*, *eihwer.*

What (O.E. *hwæt*) = *why* (Lat. *quid*) is an adverb:—

'*What* do you prate of service?"
SHAKESPEARE, *Cor.* iii. 3.

227. III. Adverbs formed from Prepositions.

Aft, in "fore and *aft*;" O.E. *æf-t-an*, after. **Af** is another form of **of** (= *from*). Cp. *af-ter*, *af-ter-wards*.

Be, by, *by and by*, *hard-by*, *be-sides*, *be-hind*, *b-ut bc-neath*, &c.

For, *for-th*, *for-thwith*, *a-fore*, *forward* (= M.E. *forth-ward*).

Fro = *from*; "to and fro."

In, *with-in*, E.E. *in-with*; M.E. *bin* = O.E. *binnan* = *within*.

Neath, *be-neath*, *under-neath*.

Cp. *ne-ther*; O.E. *ni-ther*, and Sansk. *ni* = *down*.

On, *on-ward*, *on-wards*.

Of, *off*; *a-down* (O.E. *of dûn* = *from the hill*). See **aft**.

To, *too*; *to-ward*, &c.

Through, *thorough*, *thoroughly*, *throughly*.

Up, *up-per*, *up-wards*, *upp-er-most*.

Out, *with-out*, *a-b-out*, *b-ut*. (See **Prepositions**. § 230, p. 195. § 231, p. 196.)

228. IV. Compound Adverbs.

Many are given under the head of **prepositional forms**. (See § 224, p. 188.)

There, here, and **where,** are combined with (1) prepositions, (2) adverbs, (3) indefinite pronouns to form compound adverbs:—*there-of*, *there-to*, *there-*

from, there-by, &c.; *where-so-ever, where-ever*, &c.; *else-where, some-where, no-where.*

Everywhere = *ever-y-where*, E.E. *ever ihwar* (Ancren Riwle, p. 200); *y-where* = E.E. *i-hwar, i-hwer* = O.E. *ge-hwær*. There was a M.E. *eywhere, aywhere* (which was also combined with *ever*) = O.E. *æg-hwær, everywhere*. Cp. O.E. *âhwær*, M.E. *awher, owher, ouwhar* = *anywhere.*

In O.E. we have very few compounds of *there, here*, and *where*, with prepositions; but they are numerous in E.E.

The pronominal adverbs and their compounds, as *where, where-of, where-to*, have the force of relative pronouns.

The compounds of *there, here, where*, with prepositions are almost all archaic. We replace *there-of, there-to*, &c. by *of that, of it, to that, to it*, &c.; *where-of*, &c. by *of which*, &c. and *here in*, &c. by *in this*, &c.

These compounds, being followed by the preposition, resemble the construction of *that*, and the O.E. indeclinable relative *the.*

"Thæt bed *the* se lama *on* læg."
= The bed *that* the lame man lay *on.*
= The bed *whereon* [= on which] the lame man lay.
Mark ii. 4.

"The ston *that* he leonede *to.*"
= The stone *whereto* he leant.
Vernon MS.

Some elliptical expressions containing a verb are used as adverbs, as *may-be, may-hap, how-be-it, as it were, to be sure, to wit.*

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions.

229. Prepositions are so named, because they were originally prefixed to the verb to modify its meaning. Many prepositions still preserve their *adverbial* meaning (cp. *for-swear*, *be-times*, &c.). Some relations denoted by prepositions may be expressed by case-endings. Prepositions are either **simple** or **compound.**

230. I. Simple Prepositions.

At (O.E. *æt;* Lat. *ad*).

By (O.E. *be*, *bi*). The original meaning is *about, concerning.* Another form of it is O.E. *umbe;* M.E. *umb, um;* cp. Gr. ἀμφί; Lat. *amb, am.*

For (O.E. *for*, Lat. *pro*).

Fro-m (O.E. *fram*).

Fro (E.E. *fra*).

The m in *from* is a superlative suffix. The roots for and fro are connected with each other, and with far and fore. Cp. Lat. *pro, per, præ.*

In, on (O.E. *in, on, an;* Gr. ἐν, Lat. *in*).

Of, off (O.E. of = *from;* Lat. *ab;* Gr. ἀπό).

Out (O.E. *ût*; cp. *utter*, *utmost*).

To (O.E. *tô*). It has often the sense of "for."

Up (O.E. *up*; Lat. *s-ub*).

With (O.E. *with*, *wither*, from, against). We have preserved the original force of *with* in *with-stand* &c. The sense of the Lat. *cum* was usually expressed in O.E. by **mid**; Goth. *mith*, Gr. μέτα.

231. II. Compound Prepositions.

(1) Comparatives.

Af-ter (O.E. *æf-ter*), is a comparative of the root **af** = **of** = *from*. The suffix **-ter** is the same as **-ther** in *whe-ther*, &c.

Ov-er (O.E. *of-er*; Goth. *uf-ar*; Lat. *s-uper*; Gr. ὑπέρ), is a comparative of the root **of** or **uf**. We have the same root in O.E. *ufe-weard*; E.E. *uve-weard* = *upward*, *a-b-ove*.

Un-der (O.E. *under*; Lat. *inter*) contains the root **in** and the comparative suffix **-der** = **-ther**.

In E.E. *under* = *between*; *under that* = *between that*; *meanwhile*.

Through (O.E. *thur-h*; Gr. *dur-ch*), contains the same root as the Lat. *tra-ns*, from the root *thar* or *tar*, *to go beyond*, *to cross*.

(2) Prepositions compounded with Prepositions.

B-ut (O.E. *b-ut-an*, = *be-ut-an*, *bi-ut-an*) = **be** (*by*) + **ut** (*out*).

A-b-out (O.E. *â-b-utan* = *â-be-utan*) = **a** (*on*) + **be** (*by*) + **out**.

A-b-ove (O.E. *b-uf-an* = *be-uf-an*) = a (*on*) + be (*by*) + ove (*up*).

Unto (M.E. *until*), is a compound of unt and to. The same root exists in Goth. *und;* O.E. *ôth* = *onth* = *unto.*

In-to, up-on, be-fore, with-in, through-out, be-neath, under-neath, &c.

(3) Prepositions formed from Nouns.

A-gain, a-gain-s-t (O.E. *on-geân, tô-gegnes*).

A-mong (O.E. *ge-mong, on-ge-mong;* E.E. *on-mang, bi-mong*), a = *on;* mong = *ming*-l-ing, mixing. Cp. E.E. *monglen, to mix; monglung* = *mingling.*

Other prepositions of this sort are *in-stead of* = *in the place of,* (*stead* = place) = *in lieu of; in behalf of, by dint of, by way of, for the sake of; a-breast of, a-board, a-head of, a-cross, be-side; in spite of* = *in despite of.* Sometimes we find *my despite* = *in despite of me.* Cp. the use of *maugre* (Fr. malgré) in M.E. *maugre min, in spite of me; maugre thaires* = *in spite of them.*

(4) Adjective Prepositions.

E-re (O.E. *æ-r;* M.E. *er, ar, or*), *before.* See § 116. p. 95.

Or, the M.E. form or = ar = *ere* occurs in the authorised version of the Bible. See *Ps.* xc. 2; *Prov.* viii. 23.

Or ere (= *or er* = *er er*), is a mere reduplication, like *an if.* See *King John,* iv. 3; *Tempest,* i. 2;

Hamlet, i. 2. It seems to have acquired the sense of *ere ever*. See Wright's *Bible Word Book*, p. 353.

Till (O.E. *til* good; O.N. *til* to). In M.E. we find till used as a sign of the infinitive; it formed numerous compounds as *intil* = *into*, &c.

Along (O.E. *and-lang;* E.E. *an-lang;* M.E. *endelong, endelonges*).

We sometimes find **alongst** (= *alonges*).

> "*Alongst* the lee shore."
> WEBSTER, *Northward Ho.*

"To lie *along*," = *to lie at full length.*

There is another **along** (O.E. *ge-lang*), in the phrase "*along* of," "*long* of," = *on account of.*

> "*On* hire is al mi lif *ilong*."
> *O.E. Misc.* p. 158.
> "But if it is *along on* me."
> GOWER, *Spec. E. Eng.* xx. 55.
> "And that is *long of* contrarie causes."
> HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p. 25.
> "All *long of* this vile traitor Somerset."
> 1 *Hen. VI.* iv. 3.
> "And this is *long of* her."
> FORD.

A-mid, a-midst (O.E. *on-midd-um;* M.E. *a-middes, a-midde, in-middes*), contains the preposition **a** (on) and the adjective **mid** in *middle, mid-most*, &c.

Other prepositions of this kind are, *a-round, a-slant*, &c.; *an-ent*, respecting = O.E. *on-efn, on-emn*, near, toward = E.E. *on-efen-t* = M.E. *anentes, anence; a-thwart* = across; (O.E. *on thweorh*. Cp. *thweorh* = perverse; Icel. *thvert*, the acc. neut. of *thverr*, across, transverse); *be-low, be-twix-t* (O.E. *be-tweox*) from *two; be-tween* (O.E. *be-tweon-um*) from *twain*.

Since (O.E. *sith-than;* E.E. *sith-then, sith-the* M.E. *sithenes, sith, sin, sins*), from *sîth* = *late;* O.E. *sithor later;* cp. *since when.*

O.E. *sith-than* = *later than, after that.*

(5) Verbal Prepositions.

These are new forms that have arisen out of the participial (dative) construction: *owing to, notwithstanding, out-taken,* (replaced by *except*).

We have numerous participial forms of Romanic origin, as, *according to, concerning, during, except, respecting, saving, touching.*

Save = M.E. *sauf, except.* See Chaucer, *Knightes Tale,* l. 2182.

Sans (Fr.) = *sine* (Lat.) has gone out of use. It was occasionally employed by Shakespeare.

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions.

232. Prepositions join *words*, one of which is *subordinate* to the other. Conjunctions join *sentences*, and *co-ordinate* terms. Conjunctions are of comparatively late growth, and have sprung from other parts of speech, especially from pronouns, adverbs, and prepositions.

(1) **Pronominal.**—**Yet** (O.E. *gy-t*), **if** (O.E. *gi-f*, M.E. *yi-f*, *ef*, *if*), **yea** (O.E. *gea*), **an-d.**

With *and* is connected the archaic conjunction **an** = *if.*

And is very often written for *an* by older writers.

> "*And* you love me, let's do't; I am dog at a catch."
> *Twelfth Night*, ii. 3.
>
> "I pray thee, Launce, *and if* thou seest my boy,
> Bid him make haste."
> *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, iii. 1.

We occasionally find *but and if* = *but if*; M.E. *but-if* = *unless.*

We have lost the O.E. ge—ge, *both—and;* ac, *but;* ne—ne, *neither—nor;* swa—swa, *as well—as;* oththe—oththe, *either—or;* sam--sam; the—the, *whether—or;* the or thy, and for-thy; for-tham(than)-the, be-tham-the = *for that that, by that that, because;* nu—nu = *now—now.*

For-why is *scarce* now. It occurs in the Psalms (Prayer Book).

Either—or; neither—nor; or—or, nor—nor, have the same origin as the indefinite pronouns, **either** and **neither.** See § 168, p. 127.

Or is a corruption of *either* (O.E. *ǽwther, âther*) and **nor** of *neither* (O.E. *nâther*). In M.E. we find *other—other* = *either—or; nother—nother* = *neither—nor.*

"Put not thy fyngerys in thy dysche,
Nothyr in flesche *nothir* in fysche."
Babees Book, p. 18.

"As trewe as steel *either* stoon."
Ib. p. 40.

See Luke vi. 42.

El-se, the genitive of **el** (= *other*), is often supplied by *otherwise.*

So gives rise to *also, as,* and *whereas;* **the** is the root of *though,* (O.E. theâ-h) *although, then, than, that,* &c.

The stem of **who** occurs in *what—and* (M.E. *what—what* = *both ... and*), *whether, whence,* &c.

(2) **Adverbial** (from **nouns**).—*Likewise,* (= *in likewise*), *sometimes, at times, whilst, otherwhiles, besides, be-cause, on the contrary, in order that,* &c.

To the end that (Ex. viii. 22) = O.E. *tô tham thæt* = *to that that.*

In O.E. *hwîl-um—hwîl-um; hwîle—hwîle* = *sometimes—sometimes.*

"*One while* (the moon) bended pointwise into tips of horns; *another whiles* divided just in the half, and *anon* again in a compasse round, spotted *sometime* and darke, and *soon after* on a sudden exceeding bright; *one while* big and full, and *another while,* all at once, nothing to be seene."—HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p. 6.

(3) **Adverbial** (from **adjectives**).—*Both—and, even, only, now—anon, furthermore, for as much as, evermore, lastly, firstly, finally*, &c. *Lest* = O.E. *thȳ læs the, læs the;* M.E. *leste; natheles* = O.E. *nâ thȳ læs* = *nevertheless; unless* = E.E. *onlesse.*

Not only—but also = O.E. *nalæs thæt ân thæt—ac eâc swâ; as soon as* = *sôna swâ—swâ.* In M.E. we find *na the mo* = *never the more.*

(4) **Prepositional,** many of which have come in along with the demonstrative **that.**—*Ere, after, before, but, for, since, in that, with that, till* (= *to*), *until* (= *unto*).

In O.E. *ôth thæt* = *until;* E.E. *a thet;* M.E. *for-to, for-te, fort* (that), *to that* = *until.* Sometimes *the while til,* and *while* itself, do duty for *until.*

For to has sometimes the sense of *in order to* (see Gen. xxxi. 18; Ex. xvi. 27).

(5) **Verbal.**—*Say, suppose, to talk of, considering, provided, were it not, how be it,* &c.

CHAPTER XIV.

Interjections.

233. Interjections have no *grammatical* relation to other words in a sentence and are not strictly speaking 'parts of speech.' They are either mere exclamations or cries, as, **O!** **ah!** **eigh!** **fy!** or else elliptical expressions, as **good bye** = *god b' wi' ye* = *God be with you.*

Zounds = *God's wounds;* **marry** = the *Virgin Mary;* **grammercy** = *great thanks.*

Alas, alack, Fr. *hélas,* from *las* (sad), Lat. *lassus.*

234. Some words (adverbs, verbs), are used as interjections: *how, well, out, hence, begone, look, behold.* Cp. *hail! all hail* = O.E. *wes thu hâl* = *hale be thou;* O.E. *wes hâl* has become *wassail.* See *The Blickling Homilies,* ed. Morris, pp. 3, 5.

A few primitive interjections have come down to us from the oldest English; **ha, eh** (O. E. *ea*), **lo, la,** (O.E. *lâ*), **heigh** (*hig*), **wo!** (O.E. *wâ*), **well-a-way, well-a-day** (O.E. *wâ-lâ-wâ* = *woe-lo-woe,* **what** (O.E. *hwæt*).

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word formation.

235. The primary elements and significant parts of words are called **roots**, as **tal** in *talk* and *tell;* **bar**, in *bear*, *bairn*, *birth*, &c.

The root is modified (1) by endings called **suffixes** which form **derivatives**, as, *rich*-**ly**, *nest*-**ling**; (2) by particles, placed before the root, called **prefixes**, which form **compounds**, as, **for**-*bid*, **un**-*true*.

Two words may be placed together to form compound words, as, **blackbird**.

SUFFIXES OF TEUTONIC ORIGIN.

From Demonstrative Roots.

236. I. Noun Suffixes.

Some suffixes have sprung from old demonstrative or pronominal roots; others are merely altered forms of nouns and adjectives. The origin of the former is very obscure; that of the latter tolerably certain. Cp. *beauti*-**ful**, *love*-**ly**, *glad*-**some**, &c. See Suffixes of Predicative origin, § 238, p. 209. Many words have an old vowel suffix, as, **-ale** = O.E. *eal-u* **-hue** = O.E. *heo-w*.

It must be borne in mind—

(1) That many prefixes and suffixes have no longer a living power, that is, are not now used to form new derivatives; as the prefix *for* in *for*-swear, and the suffix *-m* in *gleam*, &c.

(2) That many derivatives were formed from certain ancient roots or stems in the oldest period of our language; as *flight* from *fleðgan*, not from the modern *fly*.

-d gives a kind of *passive* signification to words formed from verbal roots: dee-**d** from *do* = *that which is done*. Cp. floo-**d** from *flow*; glee-**d** (a live coal) from *glow*; see-**d** from *sow*.

-er (O.E. *-ere*), denoting the agent or doer: bak-**er**, speak-**er**, mill-**er**.

Sometimes we find **-ar**, **-or** for **-er**; begg-**ar**, schol-**ar**, sail-**or**.

Under N.Fr. influence **i** or **y** has crept in before **-er**; as, law-*y*-**er**, glaz-*i*-**er**, cloth-*i*-**er**.

-man is added to **-er** in fish-*er-man*.

-t has crept into bragg-*ar-t*, and **-d** into dast-*ar-d*, loll-*ar-d* (M.E. *lollere*).

-est; earn-**est**, harv-**est**.

-ing, the ending of verbal nouns, O.E. *-ung*; as, learn-**ing**, writ-**ing**, &c.

-ing (O.E. *-ing*) forming diminutives: as, farth-**ing** (from *fourth*), tith-**ing** (from *tithe* = *tenth*), rid-**ing** (from *thrid* = *third*).

This suffix occurs in a few nouns without adding a diminutival force to them:—kin-**g** (O.E. *cyn-ing*):—shill-**ing**, penn-**y**(O.E. *pen-ing*); whit-**ing**, sweet-**ing**. This suffix had originally a possessive force, hence it formed *patronymics*; as, O.E. *Scilf-ing*, the son of *Scilf*; *Æthelwulf-ing*, the son of *Æthelwulf*.

-l-ing, made up of **-l** and **-ing**, forms diminutives: dar-**ling** (from *dear*), gos-**ling**, strip-**ling**, under-**ling**.

The addition of the suffix *-ling* has caused *dear*, *goose*, and *stripe*, to shorten their original long vowels. Cp. *nation* and *national*, "to *brēăk* a *fast*," and "to *brĕdkfast*."

-k: haw-**k**, mil-**k**, yol-**k**.

-kin (= *-k* + *-in*) forms diminutives: as, lamb-**kin**, lad-**kin**, fir-**kin** (from *four*).

It forms patronymics in Daw-**kin** (from *David*), Per-**kins** (from *Peter*).

-le, denoting agent or instrument: as, bead-**le**, (from O.E. *beodan*, *to pray*); bund-**le** (from *bind*); steep-**le** (from *steep*); sett-**le** (from *seat*); thimb-**le** (from *thumb*).

We find this l in angle, apple, bramble, fiddle, saddle, shambles, fowl, hail, heel, nail, sail, stile, (from *sty*, *to go up*).

-l, **-le** (O.E. *-els*, Ger. *-el*): as, buri-**al**, brid-**le**, gird-**le**, ridd-**le** (from O.E. *ræd-en*, *to read*, *interpret advise*), skitt-**les** (from O.E. *sceôt-an*, *to shoot*), shew **el** (a scarecrow).

-m (O.E. *-ma*, *-m*. Cp. Lat. no-*men*): bar-**m** (from *bear*), bloo-**m** (from *blow*), doo-**m** (from *do*): glea-**m** (from *glow*), qual-**m** (from *quell*), sea-**m** (from *sew*), strea-**m** (from *strew*, *to scatter*, *spread*), tea-**m** (from *tow*, *tug*), stea-**m** (from *stew*).

It takes the form of **-om** in bloss-**om**, bos-**om**, fath-**om**.

-n (of the same origin as the **-n** in passive participles): bair-**n** (from *bear*), beac-**on** (from *beck*), burd-**en** (from *bear*), heav-**en** (from *heave*), maid-**en**, mai-**n** (from *mag*, *to be great*), wagg-**on**, wai-**n** (from *wag*).

In chick-**en** (from cock), the suffix has a diminutival force; kitt-**en** (from *cat*) = M.E. *kit-oun*. We also find *kit-l-ing* = *kitten*.

-en in vix-**en** (from *fox*) was once a common sign of the feminine.

-nd (an old present participial ending): err-**and**, fi-**end** (from O.E. *fi-an, to hate*), freo-**nd** (from *freo-n, to love*), wi-**nd** (from *wa, to blow*).

-ness (O.E. *-nis, -nes*), forming abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives; as, wit-**ness**, wilder-**ness**; dark-**ness**, good-**ness**, &c.

-ock (O.E. *-uca*), forming diminutives and patronymics: as, bull-**ock**, hill-**ock**; pill-**ock** (a little *pill*), Poll-**ock** (from *Paul*), Wil-**cox**, Wil-c-**ock** (from *Will*).

In the Scotch dialects we find ladd-**ock**, wif-**ock**. This **-ock** becomes **-ick**, or **-ie** (**-y**); as, lass-*ick*, lass-*ie*. Cp. mamm-*y*, dadd-*y*.

-r (instrumental): fing-**er** (from *fang, to take*) lai-**r** (from *lie*), stai-**r** (from *sty, to climb*), timb-**er** (from *timb, to build*), wat-**er** (from *wet*), wint-**er** (from *wind*).

-ster (O.E. *estre*), originally a sign of the feminine gender: as, spin-**ster**.

It merely marks the agent in song-**ster**, huck-**ster**, malt-**ster**, young-**ster**.

Upholsterer or *upholster*, is a corruption of *upholder*.

-s: blis-**s** (from *blithe*), eave-**s**. It also appears in *adze, axe*.

-th, -t (of the same origin as the **d** in *seed*, &c.). It is used, for the most part, to form abstract nouns from verbs and adjectives: as, dear-**th** (from *dear*), wid-**th** (from *wide*), heal-**th** (from *hale*), leng-**th** (from *long*), slo-**th** (from *slow*), dea-**th** (from *die*), bir-**th** (from *bear*), ear-**th** (from *ear to plough*).

Drough-t (from *dry*, O.E. *drig*) : heigh-t (from *high*), len-ten (from *long*).

Drif-t (from *drive*) : fligh-t (from *fly*, O.E. *flēogan*), gif-t, (from *give*), migh-t (from *may*, O.E. *mæg*), slaugh-t-er (from *slay*, O.E. *slēahan*), sigh-t (from *see*, O.E. *seon*, pret. *seah*), draugh-t from *draw* or *drag*, O.E. *dragan*), fros-t, beques-t.

The suffix t for th is due to the sharp sounds f, gh (originally h), s. In O.E. th was always sounded flat, as in *thine*.

-ther, -ter, marking the agent: bro-ther, fa-ther, mo-ther, daugh-ter, sis-ter, fos-ter (from *food*).

-ther, -ter, -der, marking the instrument: bla-dder, (from *blow*), fea-ther (from root *fat*, *to fly*), wea-ther (from *wa*, *to blow*), fo-dder (from *fa*, *to feed*), la-dder (from root *hlī*, *to climb*), mur-der (from *mar*, *to kill*). Ru-dder (from *row*), laugh-ter.

-y (O.E. *-ig*, *-h*) : bod-y, hon-ey. It has become -ow in holl-ow, sall-ow, marr-ow, &c.

-ow also arises out of (1) O.E. *-u* :—*mall-ow*, *mead-ow*, *shad-ow*. (2) O.E. *ewe* :—*swallow*.

237. II. Adjective Suffixes.

-d (like the *d* in *dee-d*, &c.) : bol-d, col-d, lou-d, love-d, feathere-d, foote-d, &c. See p. 205.

-ish (O.E. *-isc*) forms patronymics, as, Eng-lish, Wel-sh, Ir-ish. It signifies *some-what*, *rather*, in green-ish, whit-ish, &c. ; it marks contempt and depreciation, in book-ish, outland-ish, hogg-ish.

-le, -l (O.E. *-el*, *-ol*) : britt-le (from O.E. *bryttan*, to break), id-le, litt-le (O.E. *lyt*, few), fick-le, gripp-le (grasping, greedy), new-fang-le-d (= taken up with

new things, (from O.E. *fangan*, to take), tick-le (unsteady), forget-ful = M.E. for-get-el (O.E. for-git-*ol*).

-en, *made of*. It originally signified *of* or *belonging to:* as, flax-en, gold-en, wood-en, &c.

There was once a very large number of adjectives in **-en**; as, *ashen, oaken, glassen*, &c. The extensive use that could be once made of this suffix may be seen from the following passage:—

> "God him selue thaim led thair way,
> To wise and kepe bath night and day,
> With *clouden* piler on day liht,
> With *firen* piler apon the night."—*Cursor Mundi*, G. ll. [6195-6.

Clouden piler = pillar of cloud.
Firen piler = pillar of fire.

-en (participial): bound-en, molt-en, &c.

-r, -er (O.E. *-or, -er, -r*): bitt-er from *bite*, slipp-er-y; cp. M.E. slid-er (slippery), lith-er (bad), wak-er (watchful), flicker = flik-er (= fickle, flickering).

-er and **-n** are combined in east-er-n, north-er-n, south-er-n, west-er-n.

-t: brigh-t, lef-t, ligh-t, righ-t, swif-t. See **-t**, p. 207.

-th: fif-th, six-th, seven-th.

-y (O.E. *-ig*): an-y, blood-y, clay-ey, craft-y, dirt-y, &c., sill-y (O.E. *sæl-ig*).

-ow arises out of an older **-u**:—call-ow, fall-ow, narr-ow, yell-ow.

238. II. Suffixes from Predicative Roots.

(1) Nouns.

-craft (O.E. *cræft*): priest-craft, witch-craft, wood-craft.

-kind (O.E. *-cyn*) = *kin:* man-kin-d, woman-kin-d.

In E.E. and M.E. we find fowl-***kin***, worm-***kin***, &c. In M.E. kin, instead of being used after the noun, was put between the *numeral* and *noun;* hence it is mostly found in the genitive case.

" *Monies cunnes ufel.*"
= Evil of *many a kind.*
" For *nones kunnes* mede."
= For meed of *no kind.*
" *Alles kinnes* bokes."
= Books of *every kind.*

In M.E. we find *alskyns, noskyns, no skynnes, nakin, what-kin.* These (Northern) forms are perhaps due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Dan. *alskins*, "of every sort."

The phrase *no kin* became also *no kind of*, and *no manner, no manner of*, &c. Cp. the following from the *Cursor Mundi*:—

" Of *nankines* worm þat euer is made."—G. l. 1961.
" O *nakin* worm þat es made."—G. l. 1961.
" Of *no maner* worm þat is made."—T. l. 1961.

-dom = *doom* (O.E. *dôm*, Ger. *thum*): thral-**dom**, wis-**dom**, cristen-**dom**, hali-**dom** (and halidame = O.E. *hâlig-dom;* E.E. *halidom*, sanctuary, relic); king-**dom** (from O.E. *cyne*, royal).

In E.E. *kine* is a very common prefix, *kine-ȝerde* = royal-rod, sceptre, *kine-helm* = crown, *kine-riche* = realm, *kine-setle* = royal settle, throne.

-fare (O.E. *faru*, way; *faran*, to go), way, course · thorough-**fare**, wel-**fare**, chaf-**fer** (= chap-*fare* from *cheap*).

-head, -hood (O.E. *hâd*, state, rank, person; M.E. *-hed, -hod;* Ger. *-heit*).

God-**head**, man-**hood** (M.E. man-*hede*, man-*hode*); live-li-**hood** once signified liveliness; but it now represents the O.E. *lîf-lade;* E.E. *lif-lode;* M.E. *live-lode* (life-leading), sustenance.

-herd (O.E. *hyrde*, pastor, keeper, herdsman):

shep-herd, swine-herd. Cp. goose-herd (Holinshed), hog-herd (Harrison).

-lock, -ledge (O.E. *lâc*, gift, sport), wed-lock, know-ledge (M. E. know-*leche*, know-*lache*, know-*lage*).

O.E. bryd-*lac* = marriage, reaf-*lac*, bereaving, spoil. The Icelandic -*leikr* (= O.E. -*lac*) is very common under the forms -*leic* or -*laik* in E.E., and M.E.; god-*leic* = goodness, hende-*leik*, hende-*laik* = politeness, from *hende* (= O.E. *gehende*, at *hand*, *ready*, *polite*).

-man often does duty for the O.E. -ere. Cp. ship-man, chap-man, dust-man, bell-man, work-man (O.E. wyrht-a).

M.E. *fishere* = fish-er-man. Cp. speak*er* and spoke-s-man (= M.E. speke-*man*). The s is an intruder in *craft-s-man*, *hunt-s-man*, *herd-s-man*. Wife sometimes takes the place of -*ster*. Cp. *brew-wif* (in *Piers Plowman*) for *brewestere*; *fish-wife* = fish-woman; *mid-wife*; *huzzy* = house-wife; *goody* = good-wife.

-lock, -lick (O.E. -*leac*, -*lic*, plant): gar-lick (spear plant): hem-lock, bar-ley (O.E. *ber-lic*, from *bere* barley).

-red (O.E. rêden = mode, fashion, condition; Ger. -*rath*): hat-red, kin-d-red.

-rick (O.E. *rîce*, power, dominion): bishop-rick. Cp. M.E. hevene-*riche*, king-*riche* (= E.E. kine-*riche*), realm.

-ship, -skip, -scape (O.E. *scipe*, Icel. -*skapr* = form, *shape*): friend-ship, lord-ship, wor-ship (= *worth-ship*); land-scape (land-skip) is a modern formation.

Fairfax, in his *Bulk and Selvage of the World*, coins *steamscope* for *atmosphere*.

-**stead** (O.E. *stede*, place, *stead;* from *stand*), **bed-stead**; sun-**stead** = sol-stice.

-**tree** (O.E. *treow*, tree, wood), axle-**tree**; **M.E.** dore-*tre* (door-post), rode-*tre* (rood-tree, cross).

-**wright** (O.E. *wyrhta*, E.E. *wrihte*, a workman: from *work* cp. *wrought*), ship-**wright**, wheel-**wright.**

In E.E. we find *psalm-wurhte, psalm-wrihte* = psalm-*wright*, or the O.E. *psalm-scop* = psalm-shaper, psalmist. Becon uses *psalm-o-graph* for psalmist!

E.E. *bred-wrigte* = bread-wright = baker.

-**ward** (O.E. *weard*, warder, keeper), ape-**ward**, bear-**ward**, hay-**ward.**

(2) ADJECTIVES.

-**fast** (O.E. *-fæst*, firm, *fast*): sted-**fast**, shame-**faced** (= shame*fast*, modest): root-**fast.**

-**fold** (O.E. *-feald*): two-**fold**, mani-**fold.**

-**ful** (O.E. *-ful*): aw-**ful**, bale-**ful**, hate-**ful**, need-**ful.**

-**less** (O.E. *-leâs* = loose): fear-**less**, god-**less.**

-**ly**, -**like** (O.E. *-líc; líc*, Ger. *leich*, body): god-**ly**, like-**ly**, man-**ly**, dove-**like**, war-**like.** See § 225, p. 190.

"'Tis as *manlike* to bear extremities as *godlike* to forgive."—FORD.

-**right** (O.E. *-riht*): up-**right**, down-**right.**

In M.E. *upright* = supine; *downright* = perpendicular.

-**some** (O.E. *-sum*, Ger. *-sam*) is another form of same: dark-**some**, hard-**some**, irk-**some**: **buxom**

= *bugh-som* = bending-some, pliant, obedient, from bow (O.E. *bugan* to bend): lissom = *lithe-some.*

-teen, ty = ten. See numerals § 118, p. 98.

-ward (O.E. *-weard*, becoming, leading to. Cp. O.E. *weorth-an*, to become, Lat. *versus*, from *vertere*, to turn): back-ward, for-ward, fro-ward, to-ward, unto-ward.

-wise (O.E. *wîs*, way, mode): right-eous (O.E. *riht-wîs* = right-wise. Cp. M.E. *tale-wise* = tell-tale, tale-bearing.

> "For Godd es ever on *right-wis* side,
> Werrand [warring] again *wrang-wis* pride."
> *C. Mundi*, G. ll. 7547, 7548.

-worth (O.E. *-weorth*, E.E. *-wurthe*): stal-worth, dear-worth (precious).

In E.E. we find *luue-wurthe* (love-worthy), *kine-wurthe* (royal).

239. IV. Adverbial Suffixes.

The demonstrative suffixes -s, -m, -nce, have already been treated of under adverbs, §§ 224, 226, pp. 187, 188, 191.

The following are of predicative origin:—

-ly (O.E. *-lîce*): bad-ly, on-ly, lone-ly (= *al-one-ly*), utter-ly, willing-ly. See -ly, p. 212.

-ling, -long (O.E. *-lunga*, *-linga*): head-long, flat-ling, dark-ling, side-ling, side-long.

In M.E. we find the genitive form -lynges (linges) in *grof-lynges* = groveling (prone), *hedlinges* = headlong.

> "I'll run headlongs by and by."
> WEBSTER, *Northward Ho.*
> "Hurlet (hurl'd) hym doun *hedlynges*."
> *The Gest Hystoriale*, l. 7485.

Nose-linges, *naselynge*, *noslyngys* (supine, with the nose upward), *handlinges* (hard to hand).

-meal (O.E. *-mælum*, from *mæl*, division, *meal*): limb-**meal**, piece-**meal**, flock-**meal**.

-ward, -wards: hither-**ward**, down-**wards**, up-**wards**. See p. 213.

-wise (see p. 213): other-**wise**, no-**wise**, like-**wise**.

In M.E. we find "in other wise," "in no wise," "in like wise," "in the same wise," "in what wise."

-way, -ways: al-**way**, al-**ways**, straight-**way**, straight-**ways**.

-Gate or **gates** = *gait*, way, is a suffix in M.E.
Thus *-gate*, other *-gates*, so-*gate*.

240. V. Verbal Suffixes.

-k (frequentative or intensitive): har-**k** (from *hear*), tal-**k** (from *tell*), stal-**k** (from *steal*).

-l, -le (frequentative): dibb-**le** (from *dip*), dribb-**le** (from *drip*), dazz-**le** (from *daze*), grapp-**le** (from *grasp*), dwind-**le** (from *dwine*), knee-**l**, spark-**le**, start-**le**.

-n (causative): hast-**en**, strength-**en**, fatt-**en**, short **en**, &c.

This suffix had once a reflexive or passive signification. Cp. *learn* from M.E. *leren*.

-r (frequentative or intensitive): ling-**er**, (O.E. *leng-an*, to delay), flitt-**er**, glitt-**er**, glimm-**er**, welt-**er**.

Stagger = M.E. *stakeren*. For change of consonant before the suffix, cp. dribb-le from *drip*, &c.

-s: ble-**ss** (O.E. *blêt-s-i-an*, from *blot*, sacrifice), **clean-se**, **tru-s-t**, cla-**s-p** (from *clap*), gra-**s-p**, (from *grap*), li-**s-p** (from *lip*).

Rinse = Fr. rincer (= *rins-er*, from a root found in Goth. *hrain-jan*, to cleanse; *hrains*, pure, clean. Ger. *rein*, pure.)

241. COMPOSITION.

Two or more words joined together to make a single term, expressing a new notion, are called **Compounds**: as, *black-bird, rail-road, rain-bow*, &c.

The accent distinguishes a compound word from the mere collocation of two terms, as *blackbird* and *black bird*. The hyphen is used to denote a compound, as, *passer-by, man-of-war, coast-line*, &c.

Notice the shortening of the long vowel in compounds, as, *breakfast, shepherd; vineyard* (= M.E. *wyn-yard*).

Compound words form **nouns, adjectives, verbs,** and **adverbs.**

I. Noun-Compounds.

1. Noun and noun :—

Noontide, churchyard, oaktree, doomsday, kinsman, herdsman, man-killer, &c.

There are many similar old compounds whose elements are so fused together that we do not recognize them at first sight.

Bridal = bride-ale
Bandog = band-dog, Holinshed has *band-dog* or *tie-dog*.
Gospel = *god-spell* = good-word.
Nostril = *nose-thrill* = nose-hole (O.E. *thyrel* = hole).
Orchard = *wort-* (herb) *yard* (garden); O.E. *ort-geard*.
Nightingale = night-singer (O.E. *nihtë-gale*).
Hand-y-work = O.E. *hand-geweorc*, hand work.[1]
Cp. everywhere = E.E. *ever-ihwer* = O.E. *æfre* + *gehwær*.

2. Substantive and adjective :—

Alderman, freeman, blackbird, midnight, upperhand,

[1] For a longer list, see "Historical Outlines," p. 222.

(M.E. *over-hand*), *fore-thought; neighbour* = O.E. *neâh-bur* = nigh dweller; *twilight, fortnight*, &c.

3. Substantive and pronoun :—

Self-will, self-esteem, self-sacrifice.

(4) Substantive and verb :—

Bakehouse, pickpocket, telltale, spendthrift, godsend windfall.

II. Adjective-Compounds.

1. Substantive and Adjective :—

Blood-red, snow-white, sea-sick, heart-sick, fire-proof, praise-worthy.

2. Adjective and substantive :—

Bare-foot, bare-fŏot-ed. Cp. O.E. *clæn-heort* = *having a clean heart; ân-eage* = *one-eye-d, four-footed*, &c.

3. Adjective and adjective :—

Fool-hardy (*fool* = foolish). Cp. *mad-hardy, blue-green, rathe-ripe.*

4. Participial combinations :—

(*a*) Noun and pres. part. : *earth-shaking, heart-rending, match-making.*

(*b*) Adjective and pres. part. : *ill-looking, time-serving.*

(*c*) Noun and pass. part. : *earth-born, chap-fallen, heart-broken, thunder-struck.*

(*d*) Adjective and pass. part. : *new-made, well-bred, dead-drunk*, &c.

III. Verb-Compounds.

1. Noun and verb: *backbite, hoodwink, henpeck, waylay.*

2. Adjective and verb: *dry-nurse, white-wash.*

3. Verb and adverb: *doff* = do off, *don* = do on. Cp. *cross-question.*

For compound adverbs, see § 228, p. 193, 194.

242. COMPOSITION WITH PARTICLES OF ENGLISH ORIGIN.

I. Inseparable Particles.

a- (O.E. *on*, E.E. *an*) on: a-back, a-bed, a-board, a-foot, a-sleep, a-loof, a-skew, a-loud, a-b-aft, a-b-out, a-midst, a-mong, a-thwart, a-fishing, a-hunting, &c.

1. The original form an occurs in an-on (*in one* moment), an-ent (see p. 188), a-c-knowledge (O.E. *oncnâwan*), an-vil (O.E. an-filt).

2. A- (O E. *of*, off, from): a-down = O.E. *of dûne*, from the down (hill); a-kin, a-new.

The prefix of- had an intensitive meaning, like our *over* and Latin *per*. Cp. M.E. *of-take* = overtake; M.E. *of-se* = perceive.

Of (intensive), exists in a-thirst = O.E. *of-thirst;* an-hungered = a-hungered, from O.E. *of-hyngrian*, to feel very hungry. (See *Piers Plowman*, B. x. 59, p. 146, and C. xii. 43, p. 198).

3. A- (O.E. *â-*, Goth. *us-* = out of, from), a-rise, a-rouse, a-f-frighted, a-wake, a-light; a-go = passed by.

"All this world schal *a-go.*"

O.E. Misc. p. 160.

We have a prefix a- in a-ghast, a-shamed, a-feard, **a**-ffright**ed**, but it is difficult to say whether its original meaning was *out of* (O.E. a- = Goth. us-), or *from* (O.E. *of*).

4. **A-** (O.E. *and-* Ger. *ent-*, back). **A**-long (O.E. *and-lang*, M.E. *ende-long*, E.E. *an-long*, M.E. *on-long*). **An**-swer (O.E *and-swarian*), en-lighten (O.E. *onlyhtan*).

A-bide (O.E. *an-bîdan*, *on-bîdan*, *and-bidan*).

A-gain, a-gainst (O.E. *on-gean*, Ger. *ent-gegen*).

Cp. e-lope (Du. *ont-loopen*, Ger. *ent-laufen*).

5. **A-** (O.E. *ge-*), a-ware (O.E. *ge-wær*, M.E. *i-war*), **a**-like (O.E. *ge-lîc*, ME. *i-lich*, *e-liche*, *a-liche*, *o-like*).

A-long (*of*), (O.E. *ge-lang*, E.E. *i-lang*, M.E. *a-lang*).

A-mong (O.E. *ge-mang*, *on-ge-mang*, E.E. *i-mong*, M.E. *o-mang*, *a-mong*).

A-nough occurs in Milton's *Areopagitica*, for e-nough (O.E. *ge-noh*, M.E. *enogh*, *anough*). **A**-readiness (in the Authorised Version of the Scriptures), is from M.E. *a-redi*, E.E. *i-readi*, *i-redi*, O.E *ge-rêd*.

A-f-ford (O.E. ge-forthian, E.E. *i-forthien*, M.E. *a-forthien*, from *forth*).

6. **A-** (O.E. *â* ever) : a-ught, e-i-ther.

at- (O.E. *æt-*) : at-one, **at**-onement, t-wit (O.E. *æt-wîtan*, to reproach).

The preposition **at** is used as a sign of the infinitive in M.E. *At do* has become corrupted into **a**-do ; we find also *to-do* (= *a-do*) used as a substantive.

> " Ware we neuer wont *a* stele."
> *Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 4910.
> " For ware we neuer wont *at* stele."—*Ib.* C.

be- (O.E. *be-*, *bi-* = by). See **Adverbs**, p. 188.

(1) It renders intransitive verbs transitive, as **be**queath, **be**-speak, **be**-think.

(2) It is intensitive in **be**-daub, **be**-smear, &c. We find this use of the prefix very common in M.E., as **be**-bleed, **be**-drive, **be**-bark, &c.

(3) With substantives it forms verbs, be-friend, be-troth, and a few others of recent origin.

(4) It enters into the composition of *nouns*, as be-half, be-hest, be-hoof, be-quest, by-name, by-path, by-word, &c.; and of *prepositions* and *adverbs*, as be-fore, be-sides, b-ut, &c. Bye-law probably contains the Scandinavian "by," *a town.*

Be-head = O.E. *heafdian*, E.E. *bi-heavedien, to decapitate.*
Be-lieve = O.E. *ge-lyfan*, M.E. *belcuen.*
Be-reave = O.E. *reafian*, E.E. *bireavien.*
Be-gin = O.E. *on-ginnan*, E.E. *bi-ginnen.*
Be-wray is a corruption of the O.E. *on-wreon, to discover;* O.E. *be-wreon*, signified *to cover;* the be is perhaps due to the M.E. *bi-traien, to betray.*
In be-ware we have the verb be (imper.) and the adjective ware (= cautious).

for- (O.E. *for-*). The original meaning of this prefix was *through, thorough*, like Lat. *per:* for-swear (Lat. *per-jurare*), for-bid, for-bear, for-get, for-give, for-lorn, fore-go (= for-go). The p. p. fore-gone is rare.

For-*do* occurs also in the place of the modern *do for.* Cp. Lat. *per-dere.* Spenser has for-pined, for-wasted, for-wearied. We sometimes find *for* joined to Romance roots, as, for-fend = *defend, forbid;* for-barred, *barred up, debarred.*
From the sense of *overmuch* comes that of *amiss, badly*, in *fore-speak, fore-spent.*

fore- (O.E. *fore*, Lat. *præ*, before): fore-bode, fore-cast, fore-tell, fore-said, fore-father, fore-noon, fore-sight, fore-head.

fore-gone, the p. p. of fore-go (rarely used), *to go before*, must be distinguished from fore-go (= for-go), and fore-gone (= for-gone).

gain- (O.E. *gegn*, *gean*) = against. Cp. ***a-gain.*** **Gain-say, gain-stand, gain-strive, gain-giving.**

Cp. M.E. *gein*-come = return; *gain*-sawe = contradiction; *again* was once used as a prefix. Cp. M.E. *ayen-bite* = remorse, *ayen-byggen* = redeem, *ayen-wiȝte* = counterpoise.

i-, y- (O.E. *ge-*, M.E. *i-*). This prefix was once a sign of the pass. part., as, **y-clept, y-chained (Milton).** It is wrongly used in **y-pointing** (Milton, *On Shakespeare*). It enters into the composition of **i-wis** (O.E. *ge-wis*, truly, certainly), **ever-y-where, hand-y-work.**

mis- (O.E. *mis-*), wrong, ill. Cp. **a-mis** (= on the wrong, M.E. **misse** wrong, injury): **mis-behave, mis-deed, mis-lead, mis-trust, mis-take; mis-like,** (in Shakespeare) has become **dis-like.**

For **mis-** in *mischief*, see p. 243.

nether-, (O.E. *ni-ther*) = down, below: **nether-stocks, nether-lands.**

sand- (O.E. *sâm*, half): **sand-blind** = half-blind.

"Wrinkled, *sand-blind*, toothless, and deformed."—BURTON, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, ed. 1845, p. 70.

Cp. O.E. *sâm-cwic* = half-alive; M.E. *sam-hale* = half-whole, lame (*Cursor Mundi*, l. 5153); "chiries *sam-rede*" = half-ripe (*Piers Plowman*, C. Text, ix. 311, p. 155).

to- (O.E. *to-*). This is an adverbial form of *two* (cp. Lat. *dis-*) signifying *asunder*, *in pieces:* O.E. *to-brecan* = to break to pieces, *to-dælan* = to divide; E.E. *to-don*, to do asunder; *to-fleon*, to fly asunder; M.E. *to-pullen*, to pull to pieces, &c.

It sometimes has an intensitive force, and is strengthened by the adverb **all** (quite).

"And all *to-* brake his skull."

Judges IX. 5, 3.

"Al is *to- broken* thilke regioun."

CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 2759.

Go to (used as an interjection in *Hamlet* i. 3) seems to correspond to *to-go* = O.E. *to-gân, to go away, depart;* cp. *for-do* and *do-for.*

For the phrase "*all to,*" see **all**, § 243.

to- is the ordinary preposition "to" in **to**-day, **to**-night, **to**-morrow, **to**-gether, here-**to**-fore, **to**-ward.

un- (O.E. *on-*, Goth. *and-*, Ger. *ent-*) = back (with verbs): **un**-bind, **un**-do, **un**-fold, **un**-lock, **un**-wind.

un- (O.E. *un-*) = not (with adjectives, and nouns formed from adjectives): **un**-true, **un**-wise, **un**-told, **un**-just, **un**-truth.

wan- (O.E. *wan-*) wan-ing, want-ing: **wan**-hope = despair; **wan**-ton = *wan-towen*, untrained, wild; *-towen* is the O.E. *togen*, p.p. of the O.E. verb *te-on*, lead, draw. Cp. Ger. *un-ge-zogen.*

with- (O.E. *with-*, a shortened form of *wi-ther*), against, back: **with**-draw, **with**-hold, **with**-stand.

243. II. Separable Particles.

Af-ter (O.E. *æfter*): **after**-growth, **after**-math, **after**-clap, **after**-dinner, **after**-ward.

All (O.E. *eal*): **al**-mighty, **al**-one, **l**-one, **l**-onely, **l**-onesome, **al**-to-gether, **al**-most, **al**-though, **al**-so, **a**-s.

All, meaning *quite*, is very often joined to the adverb **to** (too), and was made to precede the prefix *to-* in composition. (See **to-** p. 220).

"*All to* dirtied."—LATIMER.

"*All to* ruffled."—MILTON.

M.E. "*Al to* longe."
Life of Beket, 774.

E.E. "*Al to* wel."
Juliana, p. 50.

Forth (O.E. *forth*): **forth**-coming, **forth-going** for-ward (O.E. forth-weard).

"From that day *forthward* man most nedes deie."—*Trevisa.*
Cp. E.E. *forth-fare* = departure, *forth-gong* = progress, &c.

Fro, from (O.E. *fram*, O.N. *fra*): **fro**-ward, **from**-ward.

In (O.E. *in*): **in**-come, **in**-land, **in**-sight, **in-born**, **in**-bred, **in**-wardly, **in**-ly, **in**-lay, **in**-fold, **in**-to.

In many verbs in has been replaced by a Romance form (**en**-, em-): **en**-dear, **em**-bitter.

Of (O.E. *of* = from, *off*): **of**-fal, **off**-set, **off**-shoot, **off**-spring. See **a**-, pp. 217-8.

In M.E. we find *of-schreden*, shred off; *of-smiten*, smite off; E.E. *of-springen*, to spring from.

On (O.E. *on*, upon, forward): **on**-set, **on**-slaught, **on**-ward.

Out, ut (O.E. *ût*): **out**-come, **out**-let, **out**-break, **out**-pour, **out**-cast, **out**-joint, **out**-law, **out**-landish, **out**-side, **out**-ward, **ut**-ter. It sometimes signifies *beyond*, *over*, as in **out**-bid, **out**-do.

Over (O.E. *ofer*): above, beyond, exceedingly, too :—

(1) With nouns and adjectives: **over**-eating, **over**-flow, **over**-plus (E.E. *over-eke*), **over**-joy, **over**-big, **over**-much.

(2) With verbs: **over**-flow, **over**-hang, **over**-run, **over**-take, **over**-work, **over**-whelm, **over**-hear, **over**-look.

Over (O.E. *ufe-ra*, E.E. *uve-re*, superior; cp. a-b-*ove*): **over**-coat, **over**-man; M.E. **over**-lippe = upper-lip; **ofer**-hand = upper-hand.

Through, thorough (O.E. *thurh*, E.E. *thuruh*):

thorough-fare (M.E. *thurgh-fare*), **through**-out, **thorough**-bred, **through**-train.

Cp. E.E. *thurgh*-feren (to go through), *thurh*-driven, *thurh*-seken, *thurh*-wunian (to remain); M.E. *thorow*-bore (bore through), *thorow*-ride, &c.

Under (O.E. *under*): **under**-go, **under**-stand, **under**-lay, **under**-mine, **under**-let, **under**-sell; **under**-growth, **under**-ling, **under**-wood, **under**-hand, **under**-neath.

Up (O.E. *up*): **up**-bear, **up**-braid, **up**-hold, **up**-heave, **up**-lifted, **up**-land, **up**-shot, **up**-right, **up**-start, **up**-ward, **up**-on.

244. SUFFIXES OF ROMANIC ORIGIN.

Under the head of Romanic suffixes we must distinguish (1) those Latin suffixes that have a Norman French form; (2) those suffixes that are unchanged, being borrowed directly from the Latin language; (3) modern French and other Romance endings of Latin origin.

Voy-**age** comes through N. French; its Latin form is *vi-aticum*. Cp. beni-**son** with benedic-**tion**, charn-**el** and carn-**al**, &c.

Liqu-**our** has a N. French form; liqu-**eur** comes to us from modern French; cp. *antic* (N.Fr.), *antique* Fr. Cavalc-**ade**, escap-**ade**, are Italian words that have come to us through the French. The true French forms are *chevauch-ée* and *échapp-ée;* other forms in **-ade** (originally **-ado**), come to us directly from the Spanish language, as crus-**ade**, brav-**ado**, torn-**ado**, &c.; cp. prem-**ier** (Fr.), prim-**ary** (Lat.), prim-**er**

(N.Fr.) Many suffixes of Norman French origin have now no living power, not being used to form new derivatives.

I. Noun Suffixes.

-age (Lat. *-aticum*), forms abstract nouns: advant-*age*, bever-*age*, cour-*age*, hom-*age*.

It sometimes denotes the place where, as in hermit-*age*, parson-*age*.

Till-*age* and cott-*age* are hybrids.

-ain, -an, -en, -on (Lat. *-anus*): chapl-*ain*, chieft-*ain*, vill-*ain*, pelic-*an*, peas-*ant*, ward-*en* (= guard-*ian*), sext-*on* (= sacrist-*an*), surge-*on*, sover-*eign*.

Modern formations, having no corresponding Latin form in *-anus*, are antiquari-*an*, barbari-*an*, civili-*an*, grammari-*an*, librari-*an*, &c.

From modern French come artis-*an*, courtes-*an*, partis-*an*.

-ain (Lat. *-aneus*), appears in **-mount-***ain*, **camp-***aign*, **champ-***aign*.

-al, -el (Lat. *-alis*): can-*al*, cardin-*al*, cathedr-*al*, coron-*al*, spitt-*al*, chann-*el*, catt-*le*, chatt-*el*, fu-*el*, jew-*el*, &c.

Lat. *-alia* (pl.) appears in **batt-***le*, **entr-***ail*, **marv-***el*, **rasc-***al*, **spous-***als*, **victu-***als*.

-ant, -ent (Lat. *-antem*, *-entem*) are participial suffixes, sometimes marking the agent:—

Coven-*ant*, gi-*ant*, merch-*ant*, serge-*ant*, brig-*and*, diam-*ond*, innoc-*cent*, stud-*ent*.

-ance, -ence (Lat. *-ant-ia*), form abstract nouns:—

Abund-*ance*, allegi-*ance*, ch-*ance* (= cad-*ence*), purvey-*ance* (= provid-*ence*), obeis-*ance* (obedi-*ence*), prud-*ence*, sci-*ence*, &c.

-ancy, -ency, are new formations from the Latin *-antia, -entia,* becoming (1) *-antie, -entie,* (2) *-ancie, -encie,* &c., brilli-*ancy,* excell-*ency,* &c.

sé-*ance* is from modern French.

-and, -end (Lat. *-andus, -endus*), are gerundial suffixes :—

(1) Garl-*and,* vi-*and,* leg-*end,* prov-*end*-er.

(2) Memor-*andum* retains its Latin form; (3) preb-*end,* reprim-*and,* are directly from Modern French.

-ar, -er, -or (Lat. *-arium*), marks the place where; it enters into the name of some common objects :—

(1) Cell-*ar,* mort-*ar,* chart-*er,* dow-*er,* sampl-*er,* garn-*er,* lard-*er,* sauc-*er,* man-*or.*

(2) **-ary** (Lat. *-arium*), gran-*ary,* (= garn-*er*), avi-*ary,* semin-*ary,* viv-*ary.*

In M.E. we find O.Fr. *-aire* in sal-*arie,* seyntu-*arie* (sanctuary), lettu-*arie* = electuary.

(1) **-ar, -er, -or** (Lat. *-arius*), marks the agent: calend-*ar,* vic-*ar,* arch-*er,* butch-*er,* butl-*er,* carpent-*er,* farri-*er,* messeng-*er,* treasur-*er,* bachel-*or,* chancell-*or,* coun-sell-*or.*

(2) **-ary** (Lat. *-arius*): advers-*ary,* secret-*ary,* &c.

Commiss-*arie* = commissary, *not-arie* = not-*ary,* are met with in M.E. and the suffix is owing to the O.Fr. *-aire,* not *-arie.* See -ry, p. 230.

-ard (Low Lat. *-ardus,* Ger. *-hart,* Eng. *hard*): cow-*ard,* dull-*ard,* nigg-*ard,* buzz-*ard,* tank-*ard,* &c.

Bragg-ar-t, dastar-d, lollar-d (cp. schol-*ard* for schol-ar), must be excluded from this list.

Sweet-heart has perhaps replaced an original *sweet-ard.* (Cp. Ger. lieb-hart).

-ate (N. Fr. *-at*, Lat. *-atus*, pass. part.): cur-**ate**, leg-**ate**, reneg-**ate**.

Most nouns in **-ate** are of recent origin; **-ade** is the Spanish form of *-ate*. Cp. reneg-*ade* = reneg-*ate*. *Advocate* has replaced M.E. *avocat*, Fr. *avocat*.

-ee (Fr. *-ée*, Lat. *-atus*, suffix of pass. part.), **marks** the agent in a passive sense.

Appell-*ee*, legat-*ee*, trust-*ee*, &c., are from Modern French.

-eer, -ier (Fr. *-er*, *-ier;* Lat. *-arius*): engin-*eer*, mountain-*eer*, harpoon-*er*, brigad-*ier*, prem-*ier*, chandel-*ier*, are from Modern French. See **-ar, -er**, p. 225, for the N. French form.

-el (Lat. *-ela*): cant-*el*, cand-*le*, quarr-*el*, tut-*el*-age.

-el (Lat. *-ellus*, *-ellum*): bush-*el*, bow-*el*, chanc-*el*, mors-*el*, cast-*le*, mant-*le*, pann-*el*, pomm-*el*.

-en, -in (Lat. *-enus*, *-ena*, *-enum*): ali-*en*, warr-*en*, flor-*in*, cha-*in*, verm-*in*, ven-*om*.

-er (Lat. *-eria*): gart-*er*, gutt-*er*, matt-*er*, pray-*er*.

Barrier is the Modern-French *barr-ière*. See **-ry**, p. 230.

-erel, -rel, has a diminutive force: cock-*erel*, dott-*erel*, mack-*erel*, pick-*rel*, pick-*erel*; T.E. daint-*rel* = a dain-*ty*.

-ern (Lat. *-erna*): cav-*ern*, cist-*ern*, tav-*ern* (cp. tab-*ern*-acle).

-et, -ot (N. Fr. *-et*, *-ot;* Fr. *-et*, *-ette;* *-at*, *-ot*), is a diminutive suffix.

Blank-*et*, cygn-*et*, hatch-*et*, pock-*et*, tick-*et*, chari-*ot*, fagg-*ot*, parr-*ot*.

-et, -ot, -ette (see above): ball-*et*, ball-*ot*, bill-*ot*, paroqu-*et*, ettiqu-*ette*, coqu-*ette*, from Modern French.

To the original **-et** has been prefixed **l** (for *el*),

making a new diminutive suffix, **-let** in ham-*let*, stream-*let*, &c. See **-el**, p. 226.

-ess (Lat. *-issa*), sign of the feminine gender. See p. 66, § 85.

ess, -ice, -ise (Lat. *-itia*): distr-*ess*, larg-*ess*, lach-*ess*, rich-*es*, prow-*ess*, franch-*ise*, merchand-*ise*, avar-*ice*, coward-*ice*, just-*ice*; M.E. covet-*eise* has become covet-ous-*ness*.

Serv-*ice* = Lat. serv-*itium*; burg-*ess* = O.F. *burgeis*, court-*eous* (= M.E. curt-*eis*), and marq-*uis* contain Latin *-ensis*.

-ice, -ise (Lat. *-icem*): matr-*ice*, pum-*ice*, pent-*house* (= pent-*ise*), jud-*ge*, partrid-*ge*, paun-*ch*.

-ice (Lat. *-icius*): apprent-*ice*, nov-*ice*, surpl-*ice*, pil-*ch* (= pel-*isse*).

-ic, -c (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, Gr. ικός): log-*ic*, mus-*ic*, phys-*ic*, heret-*ic*, cler-*k* (= cler-*ic*), por-*ch*, per-*ch*, ser-*ge*, for-*ge* (= fabr-*ic*).

-icle (Lat. *-iculus*): art-*icle*, part-*icle*.

Icicle = O.E. *ís-gic-el* = ice-jag. Cp. *Iseyokels* in footnote to *Piers Plowman*, B. XVII. 227, p. 315.

-iff (Lat. *-ivus*): bail-*iff*, cait-*iff* (= cap-tive), plaint-*iff*. See **-ive**, p. 234.

-ine, -in (Lat. *-inus*): div-*ine*, fam-*ine*, medic-*ine*, bas-*in*, citr-*in*, cous-*in*, gol-*in*, pilgr-*im* (= peregr-*ine*), rav-*ine*.

Latin atonic *-ina* disappeared in Old French, hence English *dame*, *page*; Modern French has reintroduced it under the form, *-ine*, whence our *machine*.

in (Lat. *-inem*): marg-*in*, orig-*in*, virg-*in*.

-ism (Lat. *-ismus*; Gr. -ισμος): de-*ism*, fatal-*ism*, ego-t-*ism*. Many are direct from the Greek, as bar-bar-*ism*, lacon-*ism*.

No words of N.Fr. origin end in *-isme*. Cp. M.E. *sophime* = sophism.

-ist (Lat. *-ista*, Gr. ιϛ-τής): bapt-*ist*, evangel-*ist*, chor-*ist*-er; M.E. soph-*ist*-er = soph-*ist*.

More recent forms are dent-*ist*, de-*ist*, exorc-*ist*, flor-*ist*, medall-*ist*, novel-*ist*, and numerous others.

-ite (Lat. *-ita*, Fr. *-ite*) forms patronymics: Israel-*ite*, Jesu-*it*.

-id (Lat. *-id-*, Gr. *-ιδ-*, Fr. *-ide*): Æne-*id*, Nere-*id*. Many modern chemical words end in *-id*, as alkalo-*id*.

-le (Lat. *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*): fab-*le*, tab-*le*, stab-*le*, peop-*le*; with preceding *c* (which is sometimes lost), we have artic-*le*, mirac-*le*, pinnac-*le*, obstac-*le*, appar-*el*, dams-*el*, fenn-*el*, lent-*il*, parc-*el* (= partic-*le*), penc-*il*, per-*il*.

Modern forms in *-bule*, *-cle*, *-cule*, are borrowed directly from the Latin.

-l-ence (Lat. *-l-entia*) forms abstract nouns. There are very few of these forms in M.E. We find pesti-*lence* and vio-*lence*; other forms are quite recent. See **-lent**, p. 234.

-lency is sometimes found for *-lence*, like *-ency* for *-ence*.

-let. See **-et**, p. 226.

-m, -me (Lat. *-men*): char-*m*, real-*m*, cri-*me*, nou-*n*, re-now-*n*, leav-*en* (= Lat. leva-*men*, Fr. lev-*ain*).

-me, the modern French form is contained in alu-*m*, legu-*me*, volu-*me*, regi-*me*.

-men, the original Lat. form, is retained in all later loans, as acu-*men*, bitu-*men*, &c.

-m, -me (Lat. *-ma*, Gr. *-μα*): baptis-*m*, phanto-*m* (= phantas-*m*), the-*me*.

From modern French we have borrowed diade-*m*, anagra-*m*, emble-*m*, proble-*m*.

From the Greek we get anagram, epigra-*m*, paradig-*m*, panora-*ma*, enthusias-*m*, pleonas-*m*, telegram.

-ment (Lat. *-mentum*): argu-*ment*, command-*ment*, enchant-*ment*, gar-*ment*, nourish-*ment*, oint-*ment*, parliament.

It is added to Teutonic words, as, acknowledge-*ment*, atone-*ment*, bereave-*ment*, fulfil-*ment*, &c.

-mony (Lat. *-mon-iu-m*, *-mon-ia*), cere-*mony*, matri-*mony*, testi-*mony*.

-on, -eon, -ion, -in (Lat. *-onem*, *-ionem*), form many nouns denoting act of, state of: apr-*on*, bac-*on*, cap-*on*, falc-*on*, fel-*on*, gall-*on*, glutt-*on*, mas-*on*, mutt-*on*, simplet-*on*, tal-*on*, champ-*ion*, compan-*ion*, clar-*ion*, march-*ion*-ess, on-*ion*, stall-*ion*, scorp-*ion*, pant-*ion*, pig-*eon*, scutch-*eon*, sturg-*eon*, trunch-*eon*.

The N.Fr. forms of the suffix were, (1) *-un*, *iun*; (2) *-oun*, *-ioun*.

-oon (Fr. *-on*, Ital. *-one*), ball-*oon*, bat-*oon*, drag-*oon*, harp-*oon*, sal-*oon*, buff-*oon*, poltr-*oon*, are not from N. French.

Some words in *-oon* seem to be augmentatives, as, ball-*oon*, sal-*oon*, &c.; others are diminutives, as, haberge-*on*, flag-*on*.

-our (Lat. *-orem*): ard-*our*, col-*our*, fav-*our*, hon-*our*, lab-*our*, lang-*our*, liqu-*our*, rum-*our*.

The Modern French form is *-eur*, as, ard-*eur*, grand-*eur*, liqu-*eur*; the N.Fr. was (1) *-ur*, (2) *-our*.

-or, -our, -er, (Lat. *-torem*): jur-*or*, govern-*our*, emper-*or*, antl-*er*, compil-*er*, divin-*er*, found-*er*, preach-*er*, juggl-*er*, lev-*er*.

N. Fr. *-our* has become *-er* in receiv-*er*, robb-*er*, trench-*er*.

-tor (Lat. *-torem*): audi-*tor*, doc-*tor*, proc-*tor*, trai-*tor*, au-*thor*, indi-*ter*.

-our, -or, -er (Lat. *-orium*, *-oria*): min-*or*, parl-*our*, raz-*or*, viz-*or*, sciss-*ors*, count-*er*, cens-*er*, lav-*er*, (= lavat-*ory*), mang-*er*, covert-*ure*.

In M.E. we find a few forms in *-orie* = *ory*. (Cp. Fr. *-oire*,) as lavat-*orie*, orat-*orie*, purgat-*orie*.

-oir (Fr. *-oir*, Lat. *-orium*): abatt-*oir*, from modern French.

-ory, the full form of Lat. *-orium*, occurs in audit-*ory*, dormit-*ory*, refect-*ory*, repert-*ory*.

-ry, -ery (N. Fr. *-erie*): fai-*ry*, hazard-*ry*, jew-*ry*, poet-*ry*, poult-*ry*, spice-*ry*, surg-*ery*, cook-*ery*, house-wife-*ry*, mid-wife-*ry*.

We have a large number of words with this ending unknown to Middle English: as, slave-*ry*, peasant-*ry*, thieve-*ry*, witch-*ery*, trump-*ery*.

-ry (Lat. *-aria*): chival-*ry*, caval-*ry*, carpent-*ry*, pant-*ry*, vint-*ry*. Cp. the modern forms, chapel-*ry*, deane-*ry*, &c.

-ry (Lat. *-arium*): dow-*ry*, laund-*ry*, vest-*ry*, treasu-*ry*.

-son (Lat. *-sionem*): beni-*son*, mali-*son*, le-s-*son*, ori-*son*, pri-*son*, ran-*som*, rea-*son*, sea-*son*, trea-*son*, veni-*son*, fashi-*on*.

With these compare the parallel forms that have come into our language direct from Latin: benedic-*tion*, male-dic-*tion*, lec-*tion*, ora-*tion*, po-*tion*, redemp-*tion*, ra-*tion*, tradi-*tion*, fac-*tion*.

Many words now ending in **-tion**, as, *nation*, *salvation*, &c., once ended in *-ciun* (E.E.), *-cioun*, *-cion* (M.E.)

-sion (Lat. *-sionem*): conver-*sion*, man-*sion*, pen-*sion*,

pas-*sion*, pri-*son*, pro-ces-*sion*, vi-*sion*, &c.; with foi-*son* (plenty), compare pro-fu-*sion*.

-sy (Lat. *-sia*, Gr. *-σις*): catalep-*sy*, drop-*sy*, pal-*sy*, (= paraly-*sis*), fren-*sy*.

Nouns ending in **-sis** are modern words that have come direct from Greek.

-se, a still shorter form of this suffix, occurs in apocalyp-*se*, ba-*se*, eclip-*se*.

-t (Lat. *-tus*): conduc-*t*, conven-*t*, frui-*t*, strai-*t*, sain-*t*. See **y**, p. 232.

-t (Lat. *-tum*): deb-*t*, fea-*t* (= fac-*t*), join-*t*, poin-*t*.

-t (Lat. *-ta*): aun-*t*, ren-*t*, &c. See **y**, p. 232.

-t, -te (Lat. *-ta*, Gr. *-της*): aposta-*te*, come-*t*, hermi-*t*, plane-*t*, prophe-*t*, idio-*t*.

-ter (Lat. *-ter*): mis-*ter*, mas-*ter* (= magis-*ter*), minis-*ter*, fri-*ar* (Lat. fra-*ter*).

-tery (Lat. *-terium*): mas-*tery*, minis-*tery*.

-tor (Lat. *-tor*). See p. 230.

-dor in battle-*dor*, mata-*dor*, is a Spanish form.

-trix (Lat. *-trix*), a feminine suffix. See p. 67.

-ter, -tre (Lat. *-trum*, Gr. *-τρον*): clois-*ter*, spec-*tre*, scep-*tre*.

The full form occurs in modern words, as, "*spectrum* analysis." Another form of *-trum* is *-crum*, in *sepul-chre*; *brum* in *mem-brum*. Cp. *candela-brum*, *cere-brum*.

-tude (Lat. *-tudinem*): beati-*tude*, multi-*tude*, &c., are direct from Latin. *Cus-tom* = Lat. *consuetudinem*.

-ty (Lat. *-tatem*): beau-*ty*, boun-*ty*, chari-*ty*, cruel-*ty*, feal-*ty*, (= fidelity), frail-*ty*, &c.

-ule. See **-le**, p. 228.

-ure (Lat. *-ura*): advent-*ure*, apert-*ure*, creat-*ure*,

forfeit-*ure*, nat-*ure*, nurt-*ure*, meas-*ure*, past-*ure*, sepult-*ure*, stát-*ure*, vest-*ure*.

Arm-*our* = M. Lat. *armatura*.

-y (Lat. -*ia*): cop-*y*, famil-*y*, felon-*y*, nav-*y*, stor-*y*, victor-*y*, &c., Ital-*y*, Arab-*y* and Arab-*ia*.

-y (Lat. -*ium*): horolog-*y*, jo-*y*, stud-*y*. Directly from the Latin are formed augur-*y*, obsequ-*y*, remed-*y*, &c.

-y (Lat. *atus*): attorn-*ey*, deput-*y*, all-*y*.

Many words in -cy, -sy, are formed on the model of Fr. words in -*cie*, Lat. -*tia*:—cura-*cy*, minstrel-*cy*, &c. Cp. degene ra-*cy*, intima-*cy*, &c., the corresponding adjectives of which end in -*ate*.

-y (Lat. -*t-us*), cler-g-*y*: coun-t-*y*, duch-*y*, trea-t-*y*.

-y (Lat. -*ta*), arm-*y*: embass-*y*, chimn-*ey*, countr-*y*, dela-*y*, destin-*y*, entr-*y*, journ-*ey*, jur-*y*, part-*y*, vall-*ey*. See -ee, p. 226.

-y (Lat. -*ies*): progen-*y*.

II. Adjective Suffixes.

-al (Lat. -*alis*), annu-*al*, besti-*al*, casu-*al*, equ-*al*, loy-*al* (= leg-*al*), roy-*al* (= reg-*al*), &c. See p. 224.

-al forms many new derivatives, as, festiv-*al*, celesti-*al*, comic -*al*, mathematic-*al*.

-an, -ain (Lat. -*anus*): cert-*ain*, germ-*an*, germ-*ain*, hum-*an*, me-*an*.

There are numerous adjectives in -*an*, of recent formation that have no corresponding Latin form in -*anus*: agrari-*an*, barbari-*an*, diluvi-*an*, pedestri-*an*. See an, p. 224.

-ane (Lat. -*anus*): hum-*ane*, transmont-*ane* are modern forms.

-ant, -ent: err-*ant*, ramp-*ant*, trench-*ant*, obedi-*ent*, pati-*ent*, &c. See **-ant, -ent**, p. 224.

-ar (Lat. *-aris*): famili-*ar*, regul-*ar*, singul-*ar*.

-ary (Lat *-arius*): contr-*ary*, necess-*ary*, second-*ary*. See **-ar**, p. 225.

Arbitr-*ary*, disciplin-*ary*, honor-*ary*, and many English derivatives in *-ary*, having no Latin form in *-arius*.

The Lat. *-arius* is sometimes changed into *-arious*, as, nef-*arious*, greg-*ari-ous*. Sometimes *-an* is added to *-ari*, as, agr-*ari-an*, antiqu-*ari-an*, &c.

-atic (Lat. *-aticus*): fan-*atic*, lun-*atic*.

Most nouns in *-atic*, *-tic*, come directly from the Latin, as aqu-*atic*, rus-*tic*, domes-*tic*, &c. See **-age**, p. 224.

-ate (Lat. *-atus*): delic-*ate*, desol-*ate*, determin-*ate*, and some few other words in *-ate* are found in M.E. coming directly from the Latin. But most words with this ending are modern formations.

Had these words come from N. Fr. they would end in *-y*. Compare *privy*, secret, (Fr. *privé*), with *private*.

-ble, -able (Lat. *-bilis*): accept-*able*, abomin-*able*, fee-*ble*, foi-*ble* (= fle-*bilis*), mov-*able*, sta-*ble*.

The suffix **-able** is added to many Romance stems: as, agree-*able*, change-*able*, favour-*able*, deceiv-*able*, &c.

It is also added to Teutonic stems: as, break-*able*, eat-*able*, laugh-*able*, sale-*able*.

Terms in *-ible*, as aud-*ible*, vis-*ible*, are formed directly from the Latin.

-ble (Lat. *-plex*): dou-*ble* (= du-*ple*), tre-*ble* (= tri-*ple*).

-ese (Ital. *-ese*, Lat. *-ensis*): Chin-*ese*, Malt-*ese*. See p. 227.

-esque (Fr. *-esque*, Lat. *-iscus*): burl-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque; morrice* (dance) = mor-*esco i.e.* Moorish. This *-esque* is allied to English *-ish*, hence the forms Fren-*ch* and Dan-*ish*, in which the Fr. suffix is anglicised.

-ac (Lat. *-acus*): demoni-*ac*, mani-*ac*.

-ic (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, *-icum*): aromat-*ic*, barbar-*ic*, frant-*ic*, schismat-*ic*. See p. 227.

It is often combined with **-al**, as cler-*ic-al*, mag-*ic-al*, mus-*ic-al*, &c.

In Old French *icus* became *i*, whence our *enem-y* = Fr. *ennemi*, Lat. *inimĭcus*; Fr. p-*ie* = *p*-ica; *-ique* is the modern Fr. form. Cp. ant-*ic* (old form), with ant-*ique* (modern derivative).

-id (Lat. *-idus*): ac-*id*, pall-*id*, tep-*id*, rig-*id*, &c.

In N.Fr. this *-id* disappears or is changed. Cp. Eng. *neat*, Fr. *net*, Lat. nit-*idus*. In modern learned Fr. words *-ide* is used as rig-*ide*, sap-*ide*, &c.

-ile (Lat *-ilis*): frag-*ile*, ster-*ile*, &c.

-l, -le (Lat. *-e-lis*, *-i-lis*): cru-*e-l*, civ-*i-l*, frai-*l* (= frag-*i-le*), ab-*le*, subt-*le*, gent-*le*.

-ine (Lat. *-inus*): div-*ine*, citr-*in*.

Most of the words in *-ine* are of modern formation: as, aquil-*ine*, can-*ine*, genu-*ine*, infant-*ine*, &c.

-ive (Lat. *-ivus*): able to, inclined to, act-*ive*, attent-*ive*, fugit-*ive*, pens-*ive*, &c. See -iff, p. 227.

In Early and Middle English these adjectives ended in *-if*: as, *actif*, *attentif*, &c. The *f* has dropped off in *hasty*, *jolly*, *testy*. Cp. *massive* with T.E. *massy*; and *baily* = *bailiff*. We have a large number of modern derivatives in *-ive*, as, coerc-*ive*, conclus-*ive*, affirmat-*ive*, &c. We have one hybrid, talk-*ative*.

-lent (Lat. *-l-entus*) full of: corpu-*lent*, opu-*lent*, vio-*lent*, &c.

-ory (Lat. *-orius*) : amat-*ory*, mandat-*ory*, &c.

-ose (Lat. *-osus*) : bellic-*ose*, joc-*ose*, mor-*ose*.

-ous (Lat. *-osus*) full, like : copi-*ous*, curi-*ous*, danger-*ous*, fam-*ous*, lepr-*ous*, &c.

-ous also represents Lat. *-us* in the following :—

(1) Assidu-*ous*, continu-*ous*, ingenu-*ous*, &c.

(2) Anxi-*ous*, arbore-*ous*, &c.

(3) In the endings *-vorous*, *-fluous*, *-par-ous* :—omnivor-*ous*, superflu-*ous*, ovipar-*ous*, &c.

The use of **-ous** has been much extended in modern English. It is added to adjective stems, as, alacri-*ous*, asper-*ous*, atroci-*ous* precipit-*ous*, carbonifer-*ous*.

It occurs in many modern derivatives, as contradict-*ious*, felicit-*ous*, joy-*ous*.

It is added to some few Teutonic roots, as murder-*ous*.

Court-eous = E.E. curt-*eis*, O.Fr. curt-*eis*, court-*ois*.

Boister-ous = M.E. *bostois*, *boist-ous*, *bostwys*, from Welsh *bwystus*, rough, rude.

Right-eous. Here *-eous* is a corruption of *-wise*. See § 238, p. 213.

Wondr-ous. Here *-ous* is for the adverbial suffix *-s*.

"This matter is *wonders* precious."

Everyman, *O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 99.

Wonder (used as an adverb) = O.E. *wundr-um*.

Wondr-ous-ly = *wonder-s-ly* = M.E. *wonderly*.

"Of the elements so *wondersly* formed."

The Four Elements, ed. Hazlitt, p. 16.

-t, -te (Lat. *-tus*), discree-*t*, straigh-*t*, strai-*t*, modes-*t*, hones-*t*, chas-*te*, mu-*te*.

Words like *elect*, *perfect*, *distinct*, &c. have come direct from the Latin.

In Fr. the *c* disappears before *t*. Cp. *strait* and *strict*.

-und, -ond (Lat. *-undus*): ro-*und* (= rot-*und*), joc-*und*, sec-*ond*.

-y (Lat. *-ous*): spong-*y*, (Lat. *spongiosus*). We find *spongious* in Gerarde's Herbal.

-y (N.Fr. *-if*, Lat. *-ivus*): hast-*y*, joll-*y*, mass-*y*, test-*y*. See **-ive**, p. 234.

III. Verbal Suffixes.

-ate (Lat. *-atus*, the ending of the pass. part.) forms verbs from Latin and French verbs: agit-*ate*, alien-*ate*, assassin-*ate*, &c.; and from nouns and adjectives: accentu-*ate*, filtr-*ate*, superannu-*ate*, &c.

-ise, -ize (Lat. *-izare*, Fr. *iser*, Gr. *-ιζω*) forms verbs from nouns and adjectives: colon-*ize*, pulver-*ize*, civil-*ize*, fertil-*ize*.

-ish (Lat. *esc-o;* Fr. *-iss* in the pres. part. of verbs in *-ir*): establ-*ish*, flour-*ish*, fin-*ish*, nour-*ish*, pol-ish, &c.

fy (Lat. *-ficare*, Fr. *-fier*): edi-*fy*, magni-*fy*, signi-*fy*.

245. COMPOSITION WITH ROMANIC PREFIXES.

Words with these prefixes are divisible into two classes, (1) those that have come from the Latin through the Norman French, (2) those that have come directly from the Latin. The first class of words is of course the oldest. See § 244, p. 223.

A, av (Fr. *a, av;* Lat. *a, ab, abs*, away from):—

(1) **A**-vaunt (Fr. *a-vant;* Lat. *ab-ante*), **a**-d-vance, **a**-d-vantage, **a**-vert, **a**-bridge, **a**-s-soil (*absolve*), **abs**-tain, **ab**-ound, **ab**-use.

(2) *Ab*-dicate, *ab*-sent, *abs*-cond, &c.

A, ad (O.Fr. *ad, a;* Fr. *à;* Lat. *ad*, to) :—

By assimilation *ad-* becomes *ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-*.

(1) **A**-bate, **ac**-quaint (M.Lat. *ad-cognitare*), **ac**-quit, **ac**-cord, (O.Fr. *a-cointer*), a-c-count.

A-chieve, **ac**-cuse, a-d-venture, (M.E. *a-venture*), **ad**-journ (M.E. *ajorne*), **ad**-join, **ad**-verse, **ad**-versary, **af**-firm, **af**-fiance, af-finity, af-ford, a-gree, **ag**-grieve, (M.E. *ag-regge* and *a-greve*), a-d-monish (M.E. *a-moneste*), **a**-mount, **a**-merce, **al**-ledge, **al**-ly, **al**-low, **ap**-parel, **ap**-pear, **ap**-pease, **ap**-ply, **ap**-proach, **ar**-rive, **as**-sail, **as**-sault (M.E. *asaute*), **as**-size, **as**-suage, **as**-semble, **at**-tain, a-venge, a-vow.

Cp. the later loans *adieu, adroit, alarm, alert, apart, &c.*

(2) *Ad*-apt, *ac*-cept, *ac*-cumulate, *ag*-gravate, *al*-leviate, *an*-nex, &c.

An, ante (Fr. *ans, ains;* Lat. *ante*):—

(1) **An**-cestor (M.E. *ancessoure*), **an**-cestry, **v-an**-guard (= Fr. *av-ant-garde*).

(2) *Ante*-cede, *ante*-meridian, *ante*-chamber.

(3) *Ante*-date, *anti*-cipate, seem formed on the model of the Fr. *anti-dater, anti-cipier.*

Circum, circu (Lat. *circum*, around) :—

Circum-cise, **circu**-it, are found in M.E.

Modern compounds with this prefix are very com mon : *circum*-scribe, *circum*-stance, &c.

Co, com, con (Fr. *co, com, con;* Lat. *cum*, with) :—

Com becomes col before *l*, cor before *r*, and co before vowels.

(1) **Col**-late, **com**-mand, **com**-mon, **com**-pany,

con-ceive, **con**-ceit, **con**-demn, **con**-duit, **con**-found, **con**-strue, **con**-vey, **con**-voy, &c.; **coun**-sel, **coun**-tenance, **co**-vent, **con**-vent.

Couch (Lat. *collocare*); **count** (Lat. *computare*), **cost** (Lat. *constare*), **custom** (Lat. *consuetudinem*), **cover**, (Lat. *co-operire*), **curry** (Fr. *cor-royer*, for O.Fr. *con-roi*; Lat. *con-redum*,) (*redum* = arrangements from a Teutonic root *red* to arrange. Cp. **Flemish** *reden*, Goth. *raidjan*, to prepare, make *ready*).

Quail, to curdle (Fr. *coailler*, Lat. *coagulare*).

(2) Modern forms are very numerous: *col*-locate, *com*-prehend, *con*-duct, *cor*-relation, *co*-eval, *co*-executor, &c.

(3) **Co** is sometimes joined to Teutonic roots, as, *co*-worker, *co*-elder.

Counter, contra (Fr. *contre*; Lat. *contra*, against):

The N.Fr. form *counter* is used as a separate word in "to run *counter* to." It has given rise to the verb en-*counter* (M.E. *countren*).

(1) **Counter**-feit, **counter**-plead, **counter**-pane, **cont**-roller (cp. Fr. *contrôle* = *contre-rôle*), **contr**-ary, **contra**-diction.

(2) *Counter*-act, *counter*-balance, *counter*-mand, *contra*-vene, *contro*-vert, &c.

(3) *contra-band* is a modern French loan.

De (Fr. *de*, *dé*; Lat. *de*, down, from, away):—

(1) **De**-ceive, **de**-ceit, **de**-clare, **de**-cline, **de**-crease, **de**-fend, **de**-feat, **de**-form, **de**-gree, **de**-light, **de**-ny, **de**-liver, **de**-nounce, **de**-prave, **de**-serve, **de**-sire, **de**-scend, **de**-scry, (= **de**-scribe), **de**-spise, **de**-spite, **de**-stroy, **de**-vise, **de**-vour, &c.

Di-s-dain (M.E. *dedain*), **di**-still (M.E. *destylle*).

(2) *De*-ception, *de*-fect, *de*-lectable, &c.

De, dis, di (Fr. *dés, dé;* Lat. *dis, di,* asunder, in two, difference, negation):—

In E.E. and M.E. the prefix **dis** has its N.Fr. form *des* or *de.*

(1) **De**-part, **de**-fy, **de**-lay, **dis**-cover, **dis**-charge, **dis**guise, **dis**-honour, **dis**play, **dis**-turb, **dis**-please, **dis**pute, &c.

(2) *Dis*-cern, *di*-gest, *dif*-fer, &c.

(3) *Deluge* = mod. Fr. *déluge,* Lat. *di-luvium.*

(4) The following are hybrids: *dis*-believe (= mis-believe), *dis*-like (= mislike), *dis*-own, &c.

E, es, ex (Fr. *es, e*; Lat. *ex,* out of, from):—

(1) **E**-late, e-lection, **as**-say, **es**-say, **es**-cape, **is**-sue, **es**-pecial, **s**-pecial, **s**-ample (= **ex**-ample), **ens**-ample, **ex**-amine, **ex**-cite, **ex**-cuse, **ex**-ile, **a**-mend (= e-mend), **a**-fraid (Lat. *exfrigidare*) **a**-bash = O.Fr. *es-bahir.*

(2) *Ex*-alt, *e*-lect, *ex*-ecute, *ex*-empt, *ex*-pect, &c.; *ex*-emperor, *ex*-mayor.

(3) *Efface, élite* (= elect), are from modern French.

Extra (Lat. *extra,* beyond.)

(1) *Extra*-ordinary, *extra*-vagant.

(2) *Extra*-work, *extra*-freight, are hybrids.

Em, en, in (Fr. *em, en;* Lat. *in,* in, into, on):—

(1) **Em**-balm, **em**-bellish, **em**-brace, **en**-chant, **en**-counter, **en**-cumber, **en**-dite, **en**-dow, **en**-gage, **en**-force, **en**-hance, **en**-join, **en**-joy, **en**-rich, **en**-tice, **en**-treat, **en**-viron, **en**-vy, &c.; **an**-oint, **am**-bush, **im**-pair, **im**-prison, **il**-lusion, **in**-cense, **in**-cline, **in**-quire (**en**-quire).

Many words once beginning with **en-** now have **in-**.

(2) *In*-nate, *il*-lumine, *im*-migrate, &c.
(3) Hybrids are *em*-bolden, *en*-shrine, *en*-dear, &c.

In (Lat. *in*, not) :—

(1) *In*-nocent, *in*-constance, *in*-fant, *im*-perfect (= M.E. *imparfit*).
(2) It is prefixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs :—
(*a*) *In*-convenience, *im*-piety, *il*-liberality.
(*b*) *In*-cautious, *im*-politic, *il*-legal, *ir*-regular.
(*c*) *In*-capacitate, *in*-dispose, *il*-legalize, *im*-mortalize.

Un often takes the place of *in*, as *un*-able, *un*-apt, *un*-certain, &c.

Enter, inter, intro (O.Fr. *enter;* Fr. *entre;* Lat. *inter*, *intro*, within, between) :—

(1) **Enter**-prise, **enter**-tain, **inter**-dict (= M.E. *enter-dite*), *inter*-change (M.E. *enter-change*).
(2) *Inter*-cept, *inter*-sect, *intro*-duce, &c.

Ob (Lat. *ob*, in front of, against) :—

(1) **Ob**-lige, **ob**-ey, **oc**-cupy, **of**-fer, **of**-fend, **of**-fence, **of**-fice, **op**-pose.
(2) *Ob*-ject, *ob*-struct, *oc*-cur, *of*-ficiate, &c.

Per (O.Fr. *per;* Fr. *par;* Lat. *per*, through) :—

(1) **Per**-ceive, **per**-form, **per**-ish, **par**-don, **pur**-sue.
(2) *Per*-jure, *per*-secute, *pel*-lucid, *pol*-lute, &c.

Post (Lat. *post*, after) :—

(1) *Puny* = Fr. *puîné*, O.Fr. *puis-né*, Lat. *post natus*.
(2) *Post*-pone, *post*-date, *post*-script, &c.

Pre (Fr. *pré;* Lat. *præ*, before):—

(1) Pre-cept, pre-face, pre-late, pre-sence, pre-tend, pro-vost, pre-ach (= Lat. *prædicare*).

(2) Modern formations are numerous: *pre*-dict, *pre*-cinct, *pre*-announce, &c.

Preter (Fr. *prêter;* Lat. *præter*, past):—

(1) *Preter*-ite, *preter*-mit.

(2) *Preter*-natural, *preter*-perfect.

Par, pur, pro (Fr. *por*, *pour;* Lat. *pro*, forth, forward, before):—

(1) Por-tray, pur-chase, pur-pose, pur-sue, pur-vey, pro-cede, pro-cess, pro-cure, pro-nounce.

(2) *Pro*-vide, *pro*-pose, *pro*-consul, *pro*-noun.

(3) *Por*-trait = Fr. *pour*-trait.

Re, red (Fr. *re;* Lat. *red*, *re*, back, again):—

(1) Re-bell, re-ceive, re-claim, re-creant, re-cover, re-join, re-nounce, re-member, re-pair, re-pent, re-prove, re-quire, re-store, re-semble, re-treat, r-ally (Lat. *re-alligare*), re-n-der (Lat. *red-dere*), *red*-ound.

(2) Modern formations: *re*-probate, *re*-duce, *re-act*, &c.

(3) *Re*-but = Fr. *re-buter*.

(4) Hybrids: *re*-build, *re*-mind, *re*-new, &c.

Retro (Fr. *rière;* Lat. *retro*):—

(1) *Rear*-ward, *arrear*, *rear*. Cp. M.E. *arerage* (arrears).

(2) *Retro*-grade, *retro*-spect, &c.

Se, sed (Fr. *sé;* Lat. *sed-*, *se*, apart, away):—

(1) *Se*-ver, *se*-veral.
(2) *Se*-clude, *se*-parate, *sed-ition*, &c.

Sub, so (O.Fr. *so;* Fr. *se, su, sou;* Lat. *sub,* **under up from below**) :—

(1) **Sub**-tle, **suc**-cour (M.E. *socour*), **suc**-ceed, **suf**-fer, *sum*-mons, **sup**-pose, **sus**-tain, *so*-journ, &c.
(2) *Sub*-jection, *suc*-cinct, *sug*-gest, &c. It denotes (*a*) diminution, as *sub*- tepid; (*b*) of a lower order, as *sub*-committee.
(3) Hybrids: *sub*-let, *sub*-kingdom.

Sur, super (Fr. *sur;* Lat. *super,* above, beyond) :—

(1) **Sur**-coat, **sur**-face, **sur**-feit, **sur**-plice, **sur**-name, **sur**-vey; **super**-flu-ous, **super**-scription, which occur in M.E., are directly from the Latin.
(2) Modern forms are *sur*-prise, *sur*-pass, *sur*-charge, *super*-ficies, *super*-scribe, &c., *summerset* = Fr. *soubre-saut,* Lat. *super-saltum.*

Tres, tra, trans (O.Fr. *tres;* Fr. *tré, tra;* Lat. *trans,* across) :—

(1) **Tres**-pass, **tra**-itor, **trea**-son, **tra**-vel, **tra**-verse, **trans**-figure, **trans**-form, **trans**-late, **trans**-migration.
(2) *Trans*-cription, *trans*-port, *tra*-dition, &c., are modern forms.

Ultra (Lat. *ultra,* beyond) :—

(1) **Out**-rage.
(2) *Ultra*-liberal.

Vis, vice (Fr. *vis;* Lat. *vice,* instead of):—

(1) **Vic**-ar.

(2) *Vis*-count, *vice*-roi, &c.

Bis, bi (Lat. *bis,* twice; *bini,* two by two):—

(1) None.

(2) *Bis*-sextile, *bi*-ennial, *bin*-ocular.

(3) *Biscuit* is modern French *biscuit,* Lat. *bis-coctum.*

Demi (Fr. *demi;* Lat. *dimidium,* half):—

(1) *Demi*-god, *demi*-quaver.

Semi (Lat. *semi,* half):—

(1) *Semi*-circle, *semi*-column.

Mal, mau, male (Fr. *mal, mau;* Lat. *male,* ill):—

(1) **Mau**-gre, **mal**-ady.

(2) *Male*-diction, *mal*-evolent.

(3) *Mal*-treat, *mal*-content.

Non (Lat. *non,* not):—

(1) **Noun**-power impotence. Chaucer's *Boethius,* p. 75.

(2) *Non*-sense, *non*-existent.

(3) *Non*-chalance, *non*-pareil.

Mis (Fr. *mes;* Lat. *minus,* less):—

(1) **Mis**-chance (M.E. *mescheance*), **mis**-*chief* (M.E. *meschief);* (2) **mis**-fortune and **mis**-nomer are modern analogous forms.

(3) *Més*-alliance.

Pen (Fr. *pén;* Lat. *pæne,* almost):—

Pen-insula, *pen*-ultimate.

Sans, sine (Fr. *sans*, Lat. *sine*, without) :—

(2) *Sine*-cure, *sin*-cere.

(3) *Sans*-culotte, *sans*-culottism.

246. Greek Prefixes.

Nearly all compounds with Greek prefixes are of late origin.

An-, a- (*ἀν, ἀ*), *negative* like Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*: an-archy, an-æsthetic, a-pathy.

Amphi- (*ἀμφί*), about, on both sides. Cp. Lat. *am, amb*, O.E. *umbe, ymbe*, about: amphi-bious, amphi-theatre.

Ana- (*ἀνά*), *up*, up to, again, back: ana-logy, ana-lysis, an-ec-dote.

Anti- (*ἀντί*), opposite to, against: anti-dote, anti-pathy, anti-thesis, ant-arctic.

Apo-, ap- (*ἀπό*), away from, from. Cp. Lat. *ab*, Eng. *off*: apo-logy, apo-strophe, apo-gee, apo-crypha, ap-helion.

Apocalypse, from the Latin, occurs in Middle English; also *pocalips* (*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 215).

Arch-, archi- (*ἀρχή*), chief, head: arch-heretic, arch-aism, archi-tect.

Shakespeare uses *arch* as a root in *King Lear*, ii. 1, "My worthy *arch*." *Arch-bishop* occurs in M.E. Chaucer has *archi-wyves* (*Clerkes Tale*), *archi-deknes* (*Prologue*). The last existed in O.E.

Auto-, aut (*αὐτο*), self: auto-crat, auto-graph.

Cata-, cath-, cat- (*κατά*), down, downwards.

about: **cata**-ract, **cata**-strophe, **cath**-olic, **cat**-hedral, **cat**-egorize.

Dia- (διά), through: **dia**-meter, **dia**-gonal.

Di- (δι). Cp. Lat. *dis*, Eng. *to*: **di**-syllable, (often mis-spelt *dissyllable*) **di**-phthong.

Dys- (δυς) ill: **dys**-peptic, **dys**-entery.

Ec-, ex- (ἐκ, ἐξ) out, forth; cp. Lat. *ex*: **ec**-centric, **ec**-lectic, **ex**-orcism.

En- (ἐν), in. Cp. Lat. *in-*: **en**-thusiasm, **en**-tomology, **en**-comium, **em**-piric, **em**-phasis, **el**-liptical.

Epi-, ep- (ἐπί), upon, on, by: **epi**-demic, **epi**-taph, **epi**-tome, **ep**-och.

Eu-, well: **eu**-logy, **eu**-phony.

U in *Utopia* is for *ου*, not *ευ*.

Evangelist occurs in M.E. and comes through the Latin.

Hemi- (ἡμι), half: **hemi**-stich, **hemi**-sphere.

Hyper- (ὑπέρ), above, beyond. Cp. Lat. *super*, Eng. *over*: **hyper**-bole, **hyper**-critical.

Hypo-, hyp- (ὑπο), under. Cp. Lat. *sub*: **hypo**-crite, **hypo**-thesis, **hyp**-hen.

Meta-, met- (μετά), after, *trans*: **meta**-phorical, **meta**-morphosis, (cp. Latin trans-form), **met**-hod.

Mono-, mon- (μονο), single, alone: **mono**-graph, **mon**-archy. Also *monk* = O.E. *munec*.

Pan- (πάν), all: **pan**-theistic, **pan**-acea.

Para-, par- (παρά), beside, against: **para**-dox, **para**-site, **para**-phrase, **par**-helion, **para**-ble. Cp. *parley*, from Fr. through Latin.

Peri- (περί), round. Cp. Lat. *per*, Eng. *for*: **peri**-meter, **peri**-odical, **peri**-phrasis.

Pro- (πρό), before. Cp. Lat. *pro*, Eng. *fore*: **pro**-logue, **pro**-gnostic.

Pro-phet and pro-phecy, prologue, proem occur in M.E. **Pro**gramme is Fr.

Pros- (*πρός*), towards: **pros**-elyte, **pros**-ody.

Syn- (*σύν*), with: **syn**-opsis, **syn**-tax, **sym**-pathy, **syl**-logism, **sy**-stem.

247. We have some few Greek suffixes that have come from Latin though Norman-French. See suffixes, **-ic** (pp. 227, 234), **-m** (p. 228), **-ist** (p. 228) **-sy** (p. 231), **-ize** (p. 236).

APPENDIX.

Note to p. 68. **he and she.** In M.E. we find **he** and **she** used as nouns.

> " Queþer-sum it war *sco* or *he*,
> To godd be-taght þan suld it be."
>
> C. MUNDI, C. l. 10205.

Note to p. 96. **former** = O.E. *forma*, M.E. *forme;* the **r** seems to have arisen out of the final **e**; former occurs in the *Göttingen* text of the Cursor Mundi; but *Fairfax* has forme and *Cotton* form. See Cursor Mundi, (ed. Morris, p. 526, l. 9156).

Note to p. 122. **What and aught:** "gif he *hwæt* dælan wyle" = " ȝif he *awiht* delan wule." (See *O. E. Hom.* i. p. 297 and p. 103.)

Note to p. 189. **a** = **of.** Cp. the Göttingen and Cotton texts **of** the C. Mundi, l. 8968.

> " Hu all þis werld sal wite *awai.*"
>
> COTTON.
>
> " Hou all þis world suld wit *of way.*"
>
> GÖTTINGEN.

" Wendaþ mîn heafod *ofdune*, forþon þe mîn Drihten Hælend Crist of heofenum *adune* to eorþan astag."

" Turn my head *adown* (downwards), because my Lord Jesus Christ came from heaven *adown* to earth."—*Blickling Homilies*, ed. Morris, p. 191.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages.

A, 19, 36, 40, 188.
Abide, 147.
About, 196.
Accent, 20, 56.
Addition of Letters, 51.
Adjectives, 18, 58, 87.
Ado, 218.
Adverbs, 187.
Adverbs, Pronominal, 190.
After, 196.
Agglutination, 54.
Ago, 158.
Alder-liefest, 51, 88.
All and Some, 123.
Alms, 75.
Along of, 198, 218.
Alphabet, 35, 39, 40.
Also, 192
American words in English, 26.
Amends, 76.
Among, 197.
An = if, 200.
An, article, 96, 97.
Analytical languages, 17.
Anomalous verbs, 167.
Anon, 217.
Any, 126.
Apocope, 51.
Arabic words in English, 26.
Aryan, 1, 5.
Article, indefinite, 96.
definite, 114.
As, relative, 121.
As, adverb, 192.
At, before infinitive, 218.
Aught, 125.
Augustine's mission, 11.
Auxiliary verbs, 56, 185.

B, 43, 46, 51.
Be, 168—170.
Belief, 20.
Bequeath, past tense of, 144.
Best, 93.
Better, 93.
Bit, verb, 147.
Body, 123.
Both, 98, 99.
Bound (for journey) 9.
Bridal, 215.
Bridegroom, 69.
But, 196.
By, Be, 188, 189.

Can, 171.
Cardinal numbers. *See* Numerals.
Case, loss of case-endings, 56, 79, 80.

Case, 78.
absolute, 82.
possessive, 81.
dative, 79.
Causative verbs, 129.
Chaucer, 14, 16.
Chester, 10.
Chicken, 55, 61, 63.
Childer, 73.
Chinese words in English, 26.
Classical words in English, 10, 21, 30.
Cleave, 148.
Cognates, 54.
Comparison, 18, 56, 90.
Comparison, double, 91.
marks of in pronouns, 91.
marks of in adverbs, 91.
marks of in prepositions, 196.
Composition, 54.
Compounds, 54, 78, 215.
Conjunction, 200.
Conquest, Norman, effects on English, 13, 16.
Consonants, 20, 37, 39.
classification of, 37.
changes of, 43, 46.

D, 43, 51.
Danish words in English, 9.
Dare, 173.
Dative, absolute, 79.
infinitive, 164.
Decay, phonetic, 20, 45.
Degrees of comparison, 90.
Demonstrative pronouns, 114.
Dentals, 43.
Derivatives, 54.
Do, 159, 183, 186.
Dialects, 31.
Digraphs, 40.
Diphthongs, 36, 39.
Distributives, 98.
Drake, 69.
Dutch, meaning of, 4, 5.
words in English, 26.

E, 19, 36.
Each, 126.
Early English, 33.
Eaves, 76.
Either, 127, 201.
Elder, Eldest, 92.
Else, 127.
Empress, 13, 67.
English, 6.
Enough, enow, 128.
Epenthesis, 51.
Epithesis, 51.
Ere, 95.
Ess, suffix, 65, 66.
Euphonic changes, 42.
Every, 126.
Eyren, 73.

F, 44.
Farthest, 94.
Fell, (hill) 9.
Feminine gender, 18, 63.
Few, 100.
First, 95.
Firth, 10.
Foreign plurals, 77.
Formation of words, 204.
Formative elements, 54.
Former, 96, 247.
French words (modern) in English, 25.
Further, 95.
Future tense, 134.

G, 20, 44.
Gander, 69.
Gender, 19.
of nouns, 61.
of pronouns, 116.
Genitive suffixes, 80.
German, High, 4.
Low, 4.
German words in English, 26

Gerundial infinitive, 164.
Gilden, 63.
Go to, 221.
Goddess, 63.
Goose, 69.
Gossip, 43.
Gospel, 215.
Gothic, 5.
Grave, verb, 145.
Grimm's Law, 46.
Gutturals, 20, 44.

H, 20, 51.
Handy-work, 20.
He, 68, 106, 128.
Hebrew words in English, 26.
Hem, 60.
Hindu words in English, 26.
His = 's, sign of possession, 81.
Hosen, 73.
Hundred, 98.
Hybrids, 54.

I, 103.
Ilk, 117.
Indefinite article, 96.
Indo-European languages, 1.
Ine, feminine suffix, 67.
Infinitive mood, 164.
Inflections lost, 56.
Instrumental case, 115.
Interjections, 203.
Irregular comparisons, 92.
plurals of nouns, 72.
verbs, 137.
It, 107.
Italian words in English, 25.
Italic languages, 3.
Its, 113.

J, 20, 43.
Jaw, 43.

K, 43, 44.
Keltic languages, 3.
words in English, 8.
Kine, 72, 74.
King, 69.
L, 44, 51.
Labials, 43.
Lad, 69.
Lady, 69.
Languages, classification of, 3.
Lass, 69.
Last, 92.
Latin Alphabet, 35.
Latin words in English, 10.
Laws of sound-change, 42.
Less, 94.
Lest, 191.
Let, 132.
Letters, 35.
Lord, 69.
Low German, 4.

M, 43, 46.
Malay words in English, 26.
Man, 68.
Many, 100.
Marchioness, 67.
Masculine gender, 64.
May, 177.
Me, dative, 79.
indefinite pronoun, 124.
Means, 76.
Metathesis, 52.
Middle English, 34.
Mistress, 67.
Mo, 94.
Mood, indicative, 131.
infinitive, 132, 164.
imperative, 132.
subjunctive, 131.
Modern English, 34.
Much, 94.
Mum, 60.
Mun, 184.
Must, 181.
Mutes, 37.

N, 46, 51.

Nam, 169.
Nasals, 37.
Naught, 125.
Nay, ne, no, 191.
Need, verb, 185.
Needs, 187.
Neither, 127, 201.
Nephew, 69.
Neuter gender, *see* gender.
News, 76.
Next, 92.
Niece, 69.
Nill, 176.
No, 125.
Nobody, 123.
None, 97, 125.
Norman-French words, 13, 21.
  prefixes, 236.
  suffixes, 223.
Nostril, 215.
Not, 125, 192.
Nothing, 125.
Nought, 125.
Nouns, 61.
  verbal, 133.
Number, 70, 136.
Numerals, 96.
Nurse, 67.

O, 36, 39.
Objective case, 79.
Odds, 76.
Of, 56, 193, 195, 217.
Off, 56.
Old English, 33.
On, 96.
Once, 187.
One, 96, 124.
One=self, 111.
Or, conj., 201.
Or = ere, 197.
Orchard, 215.
Ordinals, *see* numerals.
Orthography, faults of English, 40.
Other, 99, 201.
Otherlike, 117.
Our, Ours, 114.
Over, 95, 196.
Owe, 179.
Own, 180, 184.
Oxen, 55, 73.

P, 43, 46.
Pains, 76.
Participles, 168.
Particles, 217.
Parts of speech, 53.
Passive voice, 130.
Pease, 75.
Periods of the English language, 33.
Permutation of sounds, 43.
Persian words in English, 26.
Person-endings of verbs, 159.
Personal pronouns, 102.
Pesen, 73.
Plural of compounds, 78.
Plural of nouns, 70.
  adjectives, 87.
Portuguese words in English, 25.
Possessive case, 79, 81
Prefixes, English, 217, 221.
  Romanic, 236.
  Greek, 195.
Prepositions, 195.
Pronominal adverbs, 190.
Pronouns, 101.
Pronouns, adjective, 112.
  demonstrative, 114.
  indefinite, 122.
  interrogative, 118.
  personal, 102.
  relative, 120.
  reflexive, 110.
Prothesis, 51.

Pure English words, 27.

Q, 38.
Queen, 69.
Quoth, 144.

R, 44, 51.
Rather, 93.
Reduplication, 55, 137.
Relational words, 17.
Revival of learning, 21.
Riches, 75.
Romanic languages, 3.
Romanic dialects, 3.
  prefixes, 236.
  suffixes, 223.
Roots, 54, 204.

S, 18, 44, 51.
Same, 117.
Saxons, 6.
Scandinavian languages, 3, 9.
Sclavonic languages, 3.
Seethe, 149.
Seldom, 187.
Self, 110.
Self-same, 112.
Sempster, 64.
Several, 128.
Shall (to owe), 175.
Shaw, 10.
Shoon, 73.
She, 68, 107.
Sibilants, 38, 44.
Small-pox, 76.
So, 117.
Softening of gutturals, 20, 45.
Some, 122.
Songster, 64.
Songstress, 65.
Sounds, classification of, 37.
  changes of 42.
  assimilation of, 44.
Spanish words in English, 24.
Spinster, 63.
Spirants, 37, 44.
Ster, suffix, 18, 19, 63.
Street, 10.
Strong verbs, 136, 137.
Such, 117.
Suffixes, adverbial, 187, 213.
  plural, 70.
  of pronouns, 117.
  of verbs, 159.
  English, 204.
  Roman, 223.
Sundry, 128.
Superlative degree, 91, 96.
  in *m-ost*, 96.
Sware, 145.
Swine, 74.

T, 43, 46.
Table of consonant sounds, 38.
  Grimm's Law, 48.
Tenses, 135.
Tapster, 64.
Ten, 97.
Tense, 134.
Teuton, Teutonic, 4.
Teutonic languages, 3.
That, 116.
The adverb, 191.
  definite article, 102, 109, 114.
  instrumental, 115.
Their, 184.
Ther, comparative suffix, 97.
These, 116.
They, 107.
Thilk, 117.
Thine, Thy, 112, 113.
This, 116.
Thorough, 56, 196.
Through, 56, 196.
Those, 116.
Thus, 191.
Till, 198.
To, 56.

Too, 56.
Transitive verbs, 129.
Trills, 37, 44.
Turkish words in English, 26.
Twain, 97.
Twelve, 97.
Twenty, 97.

U, 36.
Ulfilas, 5.
Under, 196.
Unto, 197.
Utter,

V, 43.
Verbal nouns, 153.
Verbs, classification of, 129.
anomalous, 167.
causative, 129.
conjugation of, 136.
impersonal, 130.
intransitive, 129.
inflexions of, 160.
moods of, 131.
number of, 136.
passive, 130.
strong, 129.
transitive, 129.
weak, 136, 153.
Vixen, 62.
Vocabulary English, composite nature of,
Voice, 130.
Vowel-change, 55, 63, 72.
Vowels, 36, 39.

Was, 143.
Weak verbs, 136, 153.
Welsh, 5.
Went, 158.
What, interrogative pronoun, 119.
relative, 121.
indefinite pronoun, 122.
for, 119.
Whether, 119, 120.
Which, 119, 120.
Whilom, 187.
Whit, 125, *see* Aught.
Who, indefinite pronoun, 122.
Wickliffe, 16.
Widow, Widower, 19, 69.
Wight, 122, 123, 125.
Will, 176.
Wit, 182.
Wizzard, 66.
Witch, 66.
With, 196.
Wol, 176.
Worse, Worst, 93.
Worth, verb, 170.
Writhe, 147.

Ye, 105.
Yea, 191.
Yes, 191.
Yon, yond, yonder, 117, 191.

LONDON: R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.

WORKS

BY THE

Rev. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D.,

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE. Comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word Formation. Fcap. 8vo. New Edition. *6s.*

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Containing Accidence and Word Formation. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 18mo. Cloth. *1s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. *1s.*

EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, of the Middle School, Liverpool College. 18mo. *1s.*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS.

Edited by E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.

GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. With Maps, 3*s.* 6*d.*

ENGLAND. By E. THOMPSON. Maps, 2*s.* 6*d.*

SCOTLAND. By MARGARET MACARTHUR. 2*s.*

ITALY. By W. HUNT, M.A. 3*s.*

GERMANY. By JAMES SIME, M.A. 3*s.*

AMERICA. By J. A. DOYLE. Maps, 4*s.* 6*d.*

EUROPEAN COLONIES. By E. J. PAYNE. Maps, 4*s.* 6*d.*

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. Maps. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Others to follow.

A SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. By J. R. GREEN. With Maps, &c., 8*s.* 6*d.*
[*Eighty-third Thousand.*

ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY BASED ON THE ABOVE. By C. W. A. TAIT. 3*s.* 6*d.*

READINGS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. Edited by J. R. GREEN. 3 vols. 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

OLD ENGLISH HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. With Maps, 6*s.*

CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. 4 vols. 5*s.* each.

FRENCH HISTORY FOR ENGLISH CHILDREN. By SARAH BROOK. Maps. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

WORKS ON LANGUAGE.

A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR. An Attempt to Illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By E. A. ABBOTT, D.D. *New Edition, greatly enlarged.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

LONGER ENGLISH POEMS, With Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. *New Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

FUNCTIONAL ELEMENTS of an ENGLISH SENTENCE: An EXAMINATION of the. Together with a New System of Analytical Marks. By the Rev. W. G. WRIGHTSON, M.A. Cantab. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS.

GOLDSMITH. SELECT ESSAYS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor C. D. YONGE. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

"Selected with good taste, and annotated with competent skill and knowledge. A capital book for schools."—*Literary Churchman.*

DRYDEN. SELECT ESSAYS. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

"For the student of English no better or more useful book could be found."—*The Scotsman.*

BY ARCHBISHOP TRENCH, D.D.

ON THE STUDY OF WORDS. Seventeenth Edition. Enlarged and Revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

ENGLISH PAST AND PRESENT. Eleventh Edition. Revised and Improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS Used Formerly in Senses different from the Present. Fifth Edition, enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

SCIENCE PRIMERS.

UNDER THE JOINT EDITORSHIP OF

PROFESSORS HUXLEY, ROSCOE, AND BALFOUR STEWART.

18mo. Illustrated. 1*s.* each.

INTRODUCTORY PRIMER. By Prof. HUXLEY, F.R.S.

CHEMISTRY. By Prof. ROSCOE, F.R.S. With Questions.

PHYSICS. By Prof. B. STEWART, F.R.S. With Questions.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By Prof. GEIKIE, F.R.S. With Questions.

GEOLOGY. By Prof. GEIKIE, F.R.S.

PHYSIOLOGY. By M. FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S.

ASTRONOMY. By J. N. LOCKYER, F.R.S.

BOTANY. By Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., F.R.S.

LOGIC. By Prof. JEVONS, F.R.S.

POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Prof. JEVONS.

Others to follow.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

HISTORY AND LITERATURE PRIMERS.

18mo. 1s. each.

Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN.

HOMER. By Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By R. MORRIS, LL.D.

EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, M.A.

ROME. By M. CREIGHTON, M.A. Maps.

GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A. Maps.

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A.

EUROPE. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. Maps.

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Prof. A. S. WILKINS. Illustrated.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER.

GEOGRAPHY. By GEORGE GROVE, F.R.G.S. Maps.

CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. By F. T. PALGRAVE. In Two Parts, each 1s.

SHAKSPERE. By Prof. DOWDEN.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A.

GREEK LITERATURE. By Prof. JEBB.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A.

FRANCE. By C. M. YONGE. Maps.

ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By Prof. NICHOL.

Others to follow.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

MACMILLAN & CO.'S READING BOOKS.

A NEW SERIES OF ILLUSTRATED READING BOOKS

THE GLOBE READERS

A New Series of Reading Books for Standards I. to VI. Selected, Arranged, and Edited by A. F. MURISON. With Original Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

Primer I. (48 pp.) . . .	3*d.*	Book III. (232 pp.) .	1*s.* 3*d.*
Primer II. (48 pp.) . .	3*d.*	Book IV. (328 pp.) .	1*s.* 9*d.*
Book I. (96 pp.) . . .	6*d.*	Book V. (416 pp.). .	2*s.* 0*d.*
Book II. (136 pp.). . .	9*d.*	Book VI. (448 pp.) .	2*s.* 6*d.*

"Among the numerous sets of readers before the public, the present series is honourably distinguished by the marked superiority of its materials, and the careful ability with which they have been adapted to the growing capacity of the pupils. The plan of the two primers is excellent for facilitating the child's first attempts to read. In the first three following books there is abundance of entertaining reading. . . . Better food for young minds could hardly be found."—*The Athenæum.*

ADAPTED TO THE NEW CODE

MACMILLAN'S READING BOOKS.

Primer (48 pp.), 18mo.	2*d.*
Book I. for Standard I. (96 pp.), 18mo. . .	4*d.*
Book II. for Standard II. (144 pp.), 18mo. .	5*d.*
Book III. for Standard III. (160 pp.), 18mo.	6*d.*
Book IV. for Standard IV. (176 pp.), 18mo. .	8*d.*
Book V. for Standard V. (380 pp.), 18mo. .	1*s.* 0*d.*
Book VI. for Standard VI. (430 pp.), crown 8vo.	2*s.* 0*d.*

"They are far above any others that have appeared both in form and substance."—*Guardian.*

Agriculture, The Alphabet of the Principles of; being a First Lesson Book on Agriculture for Schools. By Prof. HENRY TANNER. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*d.* Second Book. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.*

HISTORICAL READERS ADAPTED TO THE NEW CODE.

Readings from English History. Selected and Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. Three Parts. Globe 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each. I. Hengist to Cressy. II. Cressy to Cromwell. III. Cromwell to Balaklava.

Macmillan's Copy-Books. 12 sorts in Two sizes. I. Large post 4to. 4*d.* each; II. Post oblong. 2*d.* each.

MACMILLAN AND CO, LONDON.

July, 1884.

A Catalogue

OF

Educational Books

PUBLISHED BY

Macmillan & Co.,

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

INDEX.

	PAGE
CLASSICS—	
Elementary Classics	3
Classical Series	6
Classical Library, (1) Texts, (2) Translations	11
Grammar, Composition, and Philology	15
Antiquities, Ancient History, and Philosophy	20
MATHEMATICS—	
Arithmetic	22
Algebra	24
Euclid, and Elementary Geometry	24
Mensuration	25
Higher Mathematics	26
SCIENCE—	
Natural Philosophy	33
Astronomy	38
Chemistry	38
Biology	40
Medicine	44
Anthropology	44
Physical Geography, and Geology	44
Agriculture	45
Political Economy	46
Mental and Moral Philosophy	46
HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY	47
MODERN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE—	
English	51
French	58
German	61
Modern Greek	62
Italian	62
DOMESTIC ECONOMY	62
ART AND KINDRED SUBJECTS	63
WORKS ON TEACHING	64
DIVINITY	64

29 AND 30, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN,
LONDON, W.C., *July*, 1884.

CLASSICS.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

18mo, Eighteenpence each.

THIS SERIES FALLS INTO TWO CLASSES—

(1) First Reading Books for Beginners, provided not only with **Introductions and Notes,** but with **Vocabularies,** and in some cases with **Exercises** based upon the Text.

(2) Stepping-stones to the study of particular authors, intended for more advanced students who are beginning to read such authors as Terence, Plato, the Attic Dramatists, and the harder parts of Cicero, Horace, Virgil, and Thucydides.

These are provided with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary.** The Publishers have been led to provide the more strictly Elementary Books with Vocabularies by the representations of many teachers, who hold that beginners do not understand the use of a Dictionary, and of others who, in the case of middle-class schools where the cost of books is a serious consideration, advocate the Vocabulary system on grounds of economy. It is hoped that the two parts of the Series, fitting into one another, may together fulfil all the requirements of Elementary and Preparatory Schools, and the Lower Forms of Public Schools.

The following Elementary Books, with Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases with Exercises, are either ready or in preparation:—

Cæsar.—THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

THE INVASION OF BRITAIN. Being Selections from Books IV. and V. of the "De Bello Gallico." Adapted for the use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A. [*In the press.*

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School. [*Ready.*

THE GALLIC WAR. SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Cicero.—DE SENECTUTE. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

DE AMICITIA. By the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by the Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and A. V. JONES, M.A., Assistant-Masters at Haileybury College. [*Ready.*

Eutropius.—Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by WILLIAM WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A., Assistant-Masters at Surrey County School, Cranleigh. [*Ready.*

Greek Testament.—SELECTIONS FROM THE GOSPELS. Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

Homer.—ILIAD. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

ILIAD. BOOK XVIII. THE ARMS OF ACHILLES. Edited by S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*Ready.* VOCABULARY *in preparation.*

ODYSSEY. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

Horace.—ODES. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1*s.* 6*d.*
[*Ready.* VOCABULARY to Book III. *in preparation.*

Livy.—BOOK I. Edited by H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head Master of St. Peter's School, York. [*Ready.*
THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. Being part of the XXI. AND XXII. BOOKS OF LIVY, adapted for the use of beginners, by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*
THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by GEORGE RICHARDS, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*In the press.*

Ovid.—SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Phædrus.—SELECT FABLES. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabularies, by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

Thucydides.—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. BOOK I. cc. LXXXIX. — CXVII. AND CXXVIII. — CXXXVIII. Edited with Notes, Vocabulary and Exercises, by F. H. COLSON, M.A., Senior Classical Master at Bradford Grammar School; Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Virgil.—ÆNEID. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*
ÆNEID. BOOK V. Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*
SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. [*Ready.*

Xenophon.—ANABASIS. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

The following more advanced Books, with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary**, are either ready, or in preparation:—

Cicero.—SELECT LETTERS. Edited by Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury College. [*Ready.*

Euripides.—HECUBA. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A. and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

Herodotus.—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. AND VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. Edited by A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Horace. — SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Edited by Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master in Marlborough College. [*Ready.*

SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by H. A. DALTON, M.A., late Senior Student of Christchurch; Assistant-Master in Winchester College. [*In the press.*

Livy.—THE LAST TWO KINGS OF MACEDON. SCENES FROM THE LAST DECADE OF LIVY. Selected and Edited by F. H. RAWLINS, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; and Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*In preparation.*

Plato.—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Terence.—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. Edited by F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*Ready.*

The Greek Elegiac Poets.— FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected and Edited by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

Thucydides.—BOOK IV. CHS. I.—XLI. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A. [*Ready.*

Virgil.—GEORGICS. BOOK II. Edited by Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford; Assistant-Master at Uppingham. [*Ready.*

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

CLASSICAL SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS.

Fcap. 8vo.

Being select portions of Greek and Latin authors, edited with Introductions and Notes, for the use of Middle and Upper forms of Schools, or of candidates for Public Examinations at the Universities and elsewhere.

Æschines.— IN CTESIPHONTEM. Edited by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the press.*

Æschylus.—PERSÆ. Edited by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. With Map. *3s. 6d.*

Catullus.—SELECT POEMS. Edited by F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. New and Revised Edition. *5s.* The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

Cicero.—THE CATILINE ORATIONS. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Additions, by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Professor of Latin at the Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. *3s. 6d.*

PRO LEGE MANILIA. Edited after HALM by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A. *3s. 6d.*

THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge, and Fellow of St. John's College. New Edition, revised. *5s.*

PRO ROSCIO AMERINO. Edited, after HALM, by E. H. DONKIN, M.A., late Scholar of Lincoln College, Oxford; Assistant-Master at Sherborne School. *4s. 6d.*

PRO P. SESTIO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and late Classical Examiner to the University of London. *5s.*

Demosthenes.—DE CORONA. Edited by B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. New and revised Edition. *4s. 6d.*

ADVERSUS LEPTINEM. Edited by Rev. J. R. KING, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, Oxford. *4s. 6d.*

THE FIRST PHILIPPIC. Edited, after C. REHDANTZ, by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

Euripides.—BACCHAE. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

HIPPOLYTUS. Edited by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and J. B. BURY, Scholar of Trinity College, Dublin. *3s. 6d.*

Euripides.—MEDEA. Edited by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 3*s.* 6*d.*

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Edited by E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Herodotus.—BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by Rev. A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.
[*In preparation.*

BOOKS VII. AND VIII. THE INVASION OF GREECE BY XERXES. Edited by THOMAS CASE, M.A., formerly Fellow of Brasenose College, Oxford. [*In preparation.*

Homer.—ILIAD. BOOKS I., IX., XI., XVI.—XXIV. THE STORY OF ACHILLES. Edited by the late J. H. PRATT, M.A., and WALTER LEAF, M.A., Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6*s.*

ODYSSEY. BOOK IX. Edited by Prof. JOHN E. B. MAYOR. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ODYSSEY. BOOKS XXI.—XXIV. THE TRIUMPH OF ODYSSEUS. Edited by S. G. HAMILTON, B.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Horace.—THE ODES. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Charterhouse. 6*s.* (BOOKS I., II., III., and IV. separately, 2*s.* each.)

THE SATIRES. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; Professor of Latin in the University of Dublin. 6*s.*

THE EPISTLES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A. [*In the press.*

Juvenal. THIRTEEN SATIRES. Edited, for the Use of Schools, by E. G. HARDY, M.A., Head-Master of Grantham Grammar School; late Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. 5*s.*
The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

SELECT SATIRES. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. X. AND XI. 3*s.* 6*d.* XII.—XVI. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Livy.—BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head-Master of St. Peter's School, York. 5*s.*

BOOKS XXI. AND XXII. Edited by the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A., Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. With Maps. 5*s.*

BOOKS XXIII AND XXIV. Edited by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby. [*In preparation.*

Lucretius. BOOKS I.—III. Edited by J. H. WARBURTON LEE, M.A., late Scholar of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Rossall. [*In preparation.*

Lysias.—SELECT ORATIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. 6*s.*

Martial. — SELECT EPIGRAMS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A. 6*s.*

Ovid.—FASTI. Edited by G. H. HALLAM, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. With Maps. 5*s.*

HEROIDUM EPISTULÆ XIII. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

METAMORPHOSES. BOOKS XIII. AND XIV. Edited by C. SIMMONS, M.A. [*In the press.*

Plato.—MENO. Edited by E. S. THOMPSON, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

APOLOGY AND CRITO. Edited by F. J. H. JENKINSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC. BOOKS I.—V. Edited by T. H. WARREN, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. [*In preparation.*

Plautus.—MILES GLORIOSUS. Edited by R. Y. TYRRELL, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Greek in Trinity College, Dublin. 5*s.*

Pliny.—LETTERS. BOOK III. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. With Life of Pliny by G. H. RENDALL, M.A. 5*s.*

Plutarch.—LIFE OF THEMISTOKLES. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. 5*s.*

Propertius.—SELECT POEMS. Edited by Professor J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6*s.*

Sallust.—CATILINA AND JUGURTHA. Edited by C. MERIVALE, D.D., Dean of Ely. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged, 4*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

BELLUM CATULINAE. Edited by A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Sophocles.—ANTIGONE. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Tacitus.—AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Edited by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A., Translators of Tacitus. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* each.

THE ANNALS. BOOK VI. By the same Editors. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE HISTORY. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by A. D. GODLEY, M.A. [*In preparation.*

THE ANNALS. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by J. S. REID, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Terence.—HAUTON TIMORUMENOS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 3*s.* With Translation, 4*s.* 6*d.*

PHORMIO. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, B.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Thucydides. BOOK IV. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer, and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 5*s.*

BOOKS I. II. III. AND V. By the same Editor. To be published separately. [*In preparation.*

BOOKS VI. AND VII. THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Edited by the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. 5*s.*

Virgil.—ÆNEID. BOOKS II. AND III. THE NARRATIVE OF ÆNEAS. Edited by E. W. HOWSON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. 3*s.*

Xenophon.—HELLENICA, BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by H. HAILSTONE, B.A., late Scholar of Peterhouse, Cambridge. With Map. 4*s.* 6*d.*

CYROPÆDIA. BOOKS VII. AND VIII. Edited by ALFRED GOODWIN, M.A., Professor of Greek in University College, London. 5*s.*

MEMORABILIA SOCRATIS. Edited by A. R. CLUER, B.A. Balliol College, Oxford. 6*s.*

THE ANABASIS. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by Professors W. W. GOODWIN and J. W. WHITE. Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. With a Map. 5*s.*

Xenophon.—HIERO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. *3s. 6d.*

OECONOMICUS. By the same Editor. With a complete Lexicon. *6s.*

*** *Other Volumes will follow.*

CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

(1) **Texts,** Edited with **Introductions and Notes,** for the use of Advanced Students. (2) **Commentaries and Translations.**

Æschylus.—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. *5s.*

AGAMEMNON, CHOEPHORŒ, AND EUMENIDES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

AGAMEMNO. Emendavit DAVID S. MARGOLIOUTH, Coll. Nov. Oxon. Soc. Demy 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius.—BOOK IV. OF THE MEDITATIONS. The Text Revised, with Translation and Notes, by HASTINGS CROSSLEY, M.A., Professor of Greek in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. *6s.*

Aristotle.—THE METAPHYSICS. BOOK I. Translated by a Cambridge Graduate. 8vo. *5s.* [*Book II. in preparation.*

THE POLITICS. Edited, after SUSEMIHL, by R. D. HICKS, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In the press.*

THE POLITICS. Translated by Rev. J. E. C. WELLDON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Master of Dulwich College. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

THE RHETORIC. By the same Translator. [*In preparation.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. *14s.*

THE SOPHISTICI ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Aristophanes.—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* Help Notes to the same, for the use of Students, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Attic Orators.—FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. 2 vols. 8vo. 25*s.*

SELECTIONS FROM ANTIPHON, ANDOKIDES, LYSIAS, ISOKRATES, AND ISÆOS. Edited, with Notes, by Professor JEBB. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Babrius. Edited, with Introductory Dissertations, Critical Notes, Commentary and Lexicon. By Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero.—THE ACADEMICA. The Text revised and explained by J. S. REID, M.L., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. New Edition. With Translation. 8vo. [*In the press.*

THE ACADEMICS. Translated by J. S. REID, M.L. 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

SELECT LETTERS. After the Edition of ALBERT WATSON, M.A. Translated by G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Euripides.—MEDEA. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF EURIPIDES. By Professor J. P. MAHAFFY. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Herodotus.—BOOKS I.—III. THE ANCIENT EMPIRES OF THE EAST. Edited, with Notes, Introductions, and Appendices, by A. H. SAYCE, Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philology, Oxford; Honorary LL.D., Dublin. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

BOOKS IV.—IX. Edited by REGINALD W. MACAN, M.A., Lecturer in Ancient History at Brasenose College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Homer.—THE ILIAD. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by WALTER LEAF, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the late J. H. PRATT, M.A. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE ILIAD. Translated into English Prose. By ANDREW LANG, M.A., WALTER LEAF, M.A., and ERNEST MYERS, M.A. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

THE ODYSSEY. Done into English by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh, and ANDREW LANG, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Fourth Edition, revised and corrected. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF HOMER. By the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

HOMERIC DICTIONARY. For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. AUTENRIETH, with Additions and Corrections, by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Horace.—THE WORKS OF HORACE RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE. With Introductions, Running Analysis, Notes, &c. By J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. (*Globe Edition.*) 3*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Juvenal.—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. Vol. I. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. 10*s.* 6*d.*

THIRTEEN SATIRES. Translated into English after the Text of J. E. B. MAYOR by HERBERT STRONG, M.A., Professor of Latin, and ALEXANDER LEEPER, M.A., Warden of Trinity College, in the University of Melbourne. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Livy. BOOKS XXI.—XXV. Translated by ALFRED JOHN CHURCH, M.A., of Lincoln College, Oxford, Professor of Latin, University College, London, and WILLIAM JACKSON BRODRIBB, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo 7*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF LIVY. By Rev. W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Martial.—BOOKS I. AND II. OF THE EPIGRAMS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A. 8vo. [*In the press.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Phrynichus.—THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary by Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster School. 8vo. 18*s.*

Pindar.—THE EXTANT ODES OF PINDAR. Translated into English, with an Introduction and short Notes, by ERNEST MYERS, M.A., late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Plato.—PHÆDO. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by R. D. ARCHER-HIND, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

PHILEBUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, AND PHÆDO. Translated by F. J. CHURCH. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Plautus.—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Sallust.—CATILINE AND JUGURTHA. Translated, with Introductory Essays, by A. W. POLLARD, B.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Studia Scenica.—Part I., Section I. Introductory Study on the Text of the Greek Dramas. The Text of SOPHOCLES' TRACHINIAE, 1–300. By DAVID S. MARGOLIOUTH, Fellow of New College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Tacitus.—THE ANNALS. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by G. O. HOLBROOKE, M.A., Professor of Latin in Trinity College, Hartford, U.S.A. With Maps. 8vo. 16*s.*

Tacitus (*continued*)—

THE ANNALS. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of London, and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

THE HISTORY. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Rev. WALTER SHORT, M.A., and Rev. W. A. SPOONER, M.A. Fellows of New College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE HISTORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of London, and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF TACITUS. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A. and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 18mo. . *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

Theocritus, Bion, and Moschus. Rendered into English Prose with Introductory Essay by ANDREW LANG, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Virgil.—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. New Edition. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

THE ÆNEID. Translated by J. W. MACKAIL, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, & PHILOLOGY.

Belcher.—SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. New Edition. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). *2s. 6d.*

SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, Part II., On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including EXERCISES IN LATIN IDIOMS, &c. 18mo. *2s.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). *3s.*

Blackie.—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Emeritus Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Bryans.—EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE FOUNDED UPON CAESAR. By C. W. BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master in Dulwich College. Globe 8vo. [*In the press.*

Eicke.—FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. By K. M. EICKE, B.A., Assistant-Master in Oundle School. Globe 8vo. *2s.*

Ellis.—PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN, for the use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

England.—EXERCISES ON LATIN SYNTAX AND IDIOM, ARRANGED WITH REFERENCE TO ROBY'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Assistant Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* Key for Teachers only, *2s. 6d.*

Goodwin.—Works by W. W. GOODWIN, LL.D., Professor of Greek in Harvard University, U.S.A.

SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

A GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s.* "It is the best Greek Grammar of its size in the English language."—ATHENÆUM.

A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Greenwood.—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

Hadley and Allen.—A GREEK GRAMMAR. By the late Prof. HADLEY. New Edition revised by Prof. ALLEN, of Harvard College. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Hodgson.—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. *3s.*

Jackson.—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A., Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

Jackson (*continued*)—

KEY TO FIRST STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

SECOND STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION, with Miscellaneous Idioms, Aids to Accentuation, and Examination Papers in Greek Scholarship. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO SECOND STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Kynaston.—EXERCISES IN THE COMPOSITION OF GREEK IAMBIC VERSE by Translations from English Dramatists. By Rev. H. KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College. With Introduction, Vocabulary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE SAME (for Teachers only). Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Macmillan.—FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A., late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge; sometime Assistant-Master in St. Paul's School. New Edition, enlarged. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.* A SHORT SYNTAX is in preparation to follow the ACCIDENCE.

Macmillan's Progressive Latin Course. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assist. Master at St. Paul's School. [*In preparation.*

Marshall.—A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius's Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo, cloth. New Edition. 1*s.*

Mayor (John E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Mayor (Joseph B.)—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, 1*s.* 6*d.* Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, 3*s.* 6*d.* Complete in one Vol. fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Nixon.—PARALLEL EXTRACTS arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer, King's College, Cambridge. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Peile.—A PRIMER OF PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge. 18mo. 1*s.*

Postgate and Vince.—A DICTIONARY OF LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., and C. A. VINCE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Potts (A. W.)—Works by ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. Edited with Notes and References to the above. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

LATIN VERSIONS OF PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE (for Teachers only). *2s. 6d.*

Reid.—A GRAMMAR OF TACITUS. By J. S. REID, M.L., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

A GRAMMAR OF VERGIL. By the same Author. [*In preparation.*

** *Similar Grammars to other Classical Authors will probably follow.*

Roby.—A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition. Part I. containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—ATHENÆUM.

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

Rush.—SYNTHETIC LATIN DELECTUS. A First Latin Construing Book arranged on the Principles of Grammatical Analysis. With Notes and Vocabulary. By E. RUSH, B.A. With Preface by the Rev. W. F. MOULTON, M.A., D.D. New and Enlarged Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Rust.—FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A., of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New Edition. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

Rutherford.—Works by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School.

A FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition, enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary. 8vo. *18s.*

Simpson.—LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.

I. CÆSAR. Extra fcap. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Thring.—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head-Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

White.—FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Adapted to GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR, and designed as an introduction to the ANABASIS OF XENOPHON. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant-Professor of Greek in Harvard University. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Wright.—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes and Vocabulary. New and revised Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

ATTIC PRIMER. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Wright (H. C.)—EXERCISES ON THE LATIN SYNTAX. By H. C. WRIGHT, B.A., Assistant-Master at Haileybury College. 18mo. [*In preparation.*

ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, AND PHILOSOPHY.

Arnold.—Works by W. T. ARNOLD, B.A.

A HANDBOOK OF LATIN EPIGRAPHY. [*In preparation.*

THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Beesly.—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME. By Mrs. BEESLY. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Bryce.—THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE. By JAMES BRYCE, D.C.L., Fellow of Oriel College, and Regius Professor of Civil Law in the University of Oxford. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Classical Writers.—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

EURIPIDES. By Professor MAHAFFY.
MILTON. By the Rev. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, M.A.
LIVY. By the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A.
VIRGIL. By Professor NETTLESHIP, M.A.
SOPHOCLES. By Professor L. CAMPBELL, M.A.
DEMOSTHENES. By Professor S. H. BUTCHER, M.A.
TACITUS. By Professor A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A.

Freeman.—HISTORY OF ROME. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., Hon. Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. (*Historical Course for Schools.*) 18mo. [*In preparation.*

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Second Series. [Greek and Roman History.] By the same Author. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Fyffe.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., late Fellow of University College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Geddes.—THE PROBLEM OF THE HOMERIC POEMS. By W. D. GEDDES, Professor of Greek in the University of Aberdeen. 8vo. 14*s.*

Gladstone.—Works by the Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.

THE TIME AND PLACE OF HOMER. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*
A PRIMER OF HOMER. 18mo. 1*s.*

Jackson.—A MANUAL OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY. By HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow and Prælector in Ancient Philosophy, Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

Jebb.—Works by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. 2 vols. 8vo. *25s.*

SELECTIONS FROM THE ATTIC ORATORS, ANTIPHON, ANDOKIDES, LYSIAS, ISOKRATES, AND ISÆOS. Edited, with Notes. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

A PRIMER OF GREEK LITERATURE. 18mo. *1s.*

Kiepert.—MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, Translated from the German of Dr. HEINRICH KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

Mahaffy.—Works by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and Hon. Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE; from Homer to Menander. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *9s.*

RAMBLES AND STUDIES IN GREECE. With Illustrations. Second Edition. With Map. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

A PRIMER OF GREEK ANTIQUITIES. With Illustrations. 18mo. *1s.*

EURIPIDES. 18mo. *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

Mayor (J. E. B.)—BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Newton.—ESSAYS IN ART AND ARCHÆOLOGY. By C. T. NEWTON, C.B., D.C.L., Professor of Archæology in University College, London, and Keeper of Greek and Roman Antiquities at the British Museum. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

Ramsay.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Schwegler.—A TEXT-BOOK OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY. Translated from the German by HENRY NORMAN. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Wilkins.—A PRIMER OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. *1s.*

ALGEBRA.

Dalton.—RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA. By the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant-Master of Eton College. Part I. New Edition. 18mo. *2s.* Part II. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

Jones and Cheyne.—ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES. Progressively Arranged. By the Rev. C. A. JONES, M.A., and C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster School. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

Smith.—ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. By the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., late Rector of Glaston, Rutland, and Fellow and Senior Bursar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. New Edition, carefully Revised. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Todhunter.—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to Students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

ALGEBRA. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

EUCLID & ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY.

Constable.—GEOMETRICAL EXERCISES FOR BEGINNERS. By SAMUEL CONSTABLE. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Cuthbertson.—EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY. By FRANCIS CUTHBERTSON, M.A., LL.D., Head Mathematical Master of the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Dodgson.—EUCLID. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by CHARLES L. DODGSON, M.A., Student and late Mathematical Lecturer of Christ Church, Oxford. Second Edition, with words substituted for the Algebraical Symbols used in the First Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.*

*** The text of this Edition has been ascertained, by counting the words, to be *less than five-sevenths* of that contained in the ordinary editions.

Kitchener.—A GEOMETRICAL NOTE-BOOK, containing Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study of Geometry. For the Use of Schools. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., Mathematical Master at Rugby. New Edition. 4to. 2*s.*

Mault.—NATURAL GEOMETRY: an Introduction to the Logical Study of Mathematics. For Schools and Technical Classes. With Explanatory Models, based upon the Tachymetrical works of Ed. Lagout. By A. MAULT. 18mo. 1*s.*
Models to Illustrate the above, in Box, 12*s.* 6*d.*

Smith. — AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SOLID GEOMETRY. By CHARLES SMITH, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 9*s.* 6*d.*

Syllabus of Plane Geometry (corresponding to Euclid, Books I.—VI.). Prepared by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1*s.*

Todhunter.—THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*
KEY TO EXERCISES IN EUCLID. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Wilson (J. M.).—ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY. BOOKS I.—V. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Six Books. Following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By the Rev. J. M. WILSON, M.A., Head Master of Clifton College. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

MENSURATION.

Tebay.—ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS. With numerous examples. By SEPTIMUS TEBAY, B.A., Head Master of Queen Elizabeth's Grammar School, Rivington. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Todhunter.—MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge. With Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

HIGHER MATHEMATICS.

Airy.—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal:—

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities. With Diagrams. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Alexander (T.).—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. Being the simpler and more practical Cases of Stress and Strain wrought out individually from first principles by means of Elementary Mathematics. By T. ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Civil Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan. Crown 8vo. Part I. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Alexander and Thomson.—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. By THOMAS ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan: and ARTHUR WATSON THOMSON, C.E., B.Sc., Professor of Engineering at the Royal College, Cirencester. Part II. TRANSVERSE STRESS. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Bayma.—THE ELEMENTS OF MOLECULAR MECHANICS. By JOSEPH BAYMA, S.J., Professor of Philosophy, Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Beasley.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. With Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A. Eighth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Blackburn (Hugh).—ELEMENTS OF PLANE TRIGONOMETRY, for the use of the Junior Class in Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A., late Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Boole.—Works by G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., late Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Supplementary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. Third Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Cambridge Senate-House Problems and Riders, with Solutions:—

1875—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

1878—SOLUTIONS OF SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS. By the Mathematical Moderators and Examiners. Edited by J. W. L. GLAISHER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 12*s.*

Cheyne.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY THEORY. By C. H. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S. With a Collection of Problems. Third Edition. Edited by Rev. A. FREEMAN, M.A., F.R.A.S. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Christie.—A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS; with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Clausius.—MECHANICAL THEORY OF HEAT. By R. CLAUSIUS. Translated by WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Clifford.—THE ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC. An Introduction to the Study of Motion and Rest in Solid and Fluid Bodies. By W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S., late Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics at University College, London. Part I.—KINEMATIC. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Cotterill.—A TREATISE ON APPLIED MECHANICS. By JAMES COTTERILL, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Applied Mechanics at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. With Illustrations. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Day. — PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED GEOMETRICALLY. Part I. THE ELLIPSE. With Problems. By the Rev. H. G. DAY, M.A. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Day (R. E.)—ELECTRIC LIGHT ARITHMETIC. By R. E. DAY, M.A., Evening Lecturer in Experimental Physics at King's College, London. Pott 8vo. 2*s.*

Drew.—GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS. By W. H. DREW, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREW'S CONIC SECTIONS. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Dyer.—EXERCISES IN ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY. Compiled and arranged by J. M. DYER, M.A., Senior Mathematical Master in the Classical Department of Cheltenham College. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Edgar (J. H.) and Pritchard (G. S.).—NOTE-BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY. Containing Problems with help for Solutions. By J. H. EDGAR, M.A., Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines, and G. S. PRITCHARD. Fourth Edition, revised by ARTHUR MEEZE. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Ferrers.—Works by the Rev. N. M. FERRERS, M.A., Fellow and Master of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO-ORDINATES, the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SPHERICAL HARMONICS, AND SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THEM. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Forsyth.—A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. By A. R. FORSYTH, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

Frost.—Works by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., D.Sc., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Mathematical Lecturer at King's College.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. 8vo. *12s.*

SOLID GEOMETRY. A New Edition, revised and enlarged, of the Treatise by FROST and WOLSTENHOLME. In 2 Vols. Vol. I. 8vo. *16s.*

Hemming.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. *9s.*

Jackson.—GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS. An Elementary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane Sections of a Cone, and treated by the Method of Projection. By J. STUART JACKSON, M.A., late Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Jellet (John H.).—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF FRICTION. By JOHN H. JELLET, B.D., Provost of Trinity College, Dublin; President of the Royal Irish Academy. 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Johnson.—INTEGRAL CALCULUS, an Elementary Treatise on the; Founded on the Method of Rates or Fluxions. By WILLIAM WOOLSEY JOHNSON, Professor of Mathematics at the United States Naval Academy, Annopolis, Maryland. Demy 8vo. *8s.*

Kelland and Tait.—INTRODUCTION TO QUATERNIONS, with numerous examples. By P. KELLAND, M.A., F.R.S., and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professors in the Department of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Kempe.—HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE: a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Lock.—ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY. By Rev. J. B. LOCK, M.A., Senior Fellow, Assistant Tutor and Lecturer in Mathematics, of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge; late Assistant-Master at Eton. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

HIGHER TRIGONOMETRY. By the same Author. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Both Parts complete in One Volume. Globe 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Lupton.—ELEMENTARY CHEMICAL ARITHMETIC. With 1,100 Problems. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., Assistant-Master in Harrow School. Globe 8vo. *5s.*

Macfarlane.—PHYSICAL ARITHMETIC. By ALEXANDER MACFARLANE, D.Sc., Examiner in Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Merriman.—ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD OF LEAST SQUARE. By MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph.D., Professor of Civil and Mechanical Engineering, Lehigh University, Bethlehem, Penn. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Millar.—ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY. By J. B. MILLAR, C.E., Assistant Lecturer in Engineering in Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Milne.—WEEKLY PROBLEM PAPERS. By Rev. JOHN J. MILNE, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Morgan.—A COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAMPLES IN MATHEMATICS. With Answers. By H. A. MORGAN, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

Muir.—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF DETERMINANTS. With graduated sets of Examples. For use in Colleges and Schools. By THOS. MUIR, M.A., F.R.S.E., Mathematical Master in the High School of Glasgow. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Parkinson.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes in Schools. By S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge. With a Collection of Examples. Sixth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *9s. 6d.*

Phear.—ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS. With Numerous Examples. By J. B. PHEAR, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

Pirie.—LESSONS ON RIGID DYNAMICS. By the Rev. G. PIRIE, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Cambridge; Professor of Mathematics in the University of Aberdeen. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Puckle.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY. With Numerous Examples and Hints for their Solution; especially designed for the Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Rawlinson.—ELEMENTARY STATICS. By the Rev. GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A. Edited by the Rev. EDWARD STURGES, M.A. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Reynolds.—MODERN METHODS IN ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY. By E. M. REYNOLDS, M.A., Mathematical Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Reuleaux.—THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY. Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. W. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. *21s.*

Rice and Johnson.—DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, an Elementary Treatise on the; Founded on the Method of Rates or Fluxions. By JOHN MINOT RICE, Professor of Mathematics in the United States Navy, and WILLIAM WOOLSEY JOHNSON, Professor of Mathematics at the United States Naval Academy. Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. Demy 8vo. *16s.* Abridged Edition, *8s.*

Robinson.—TREATISE ON MARINE SURVEYING. Prepared for the use of younger Naval Officers. With Questions for Examinations and Exercises principally from the Papers of the

Robinson—*(continued)*—

Royal Naval College. With the results. By Rev. JOHN L. ROBINSON, Chaplain and Instructor in the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

CONTENTS.—Symbols used in Charts and Surveying—The Construction and Use of Scales—Laying off Angles—Fixing Positions by Angles — Charts and Chart-Drawing—Instruments and Observing — Base Lines—Triangulation—Levelling—Tides and Tidal Observations—Soundings—Chronometers—Meridian Distances—Method of Plotting a Survey—Miscellaneous Exercises—Index.

Routh.—Works by EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor at St. Peter's College, Cambridge; Examiner in the University of London.

A TREATISE ON THE DYNAMICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES. With numerous Examples. Fourth and enlarged Edition. Two Vols. Vol. I.—Elementary Parts. 8vo. *14s.* Vol. II.—The Higher Parts. 8vo. [*In the press.*

STABILITY OF A GIVEN STATE OF MOTION, PARTICULARLY STEADY MOTION. Adams' Prize Essay for 1877. 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Smith (C.).—CONIC SECTIONS. By CHARLES SMITH, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Snowball.—THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY; with the Construction and Use of Tables of Logarithms. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Tait and Steele.—A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A PARTICLE. With numerous Examples. By Professor TAIT and Mr. STEELE. Fourth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *12s.*

Thomson.—A TREATISE ON THE MOTION OF VORTEX RINGS. An Essay to which the Adams Prize was adjudged in 1882 in the University of Cambridge. By J. J. THOMSON, Fellow and Assistant Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Diagrams. 8vo. *6s.*

Todhunter.—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical and other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Todhunter.—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., &c. (*continued*)—

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

KEY TO MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. For Schools and Colleges. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

KEY TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

A TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *4s.*

A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY, from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace. 8vo. *18s.*

RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS, principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions: an Essay to which the Adams' Prize was awarded in the University of Cambridge in 1871. 8vo. *6s.*

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace. 2 vols. 8vo. *24s.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LAPLACE'S, LAME'S, AND BESSEL'S FUNCTIONS. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Wilson (J. M.).—SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS. With Appendices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the Use of Schools. By Rev. J. M. WILSON, M.A. Head Master of Clifton College. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Wilson.—GRADUATED EXERCISES IN PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. Compiled and arranged by J. WILSON, M.A., and S. R. WILSON, B.A. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

"The exercises seem beautifully graduated and adapted to lead a student on most gently and pleasantly."—E. J. ROUTH, F.R.S., St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

(See also *Elementary Geometry.*)

Wilson (W. P.).—A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS. By W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. *9s. 6d.*

Woolwich Mathematical Papers, for Admission into the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, 1880—1883 inclusive. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Wolstenholme.—MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS, on Subjects included in the First and Second Divisions of the Schedule of subjects for the Cambridge Mathematical Tripos Examination. Devised and arranged by JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, D.Sc., late Fellow of Christ's College, sometime Fellow of St. John's College, and Professor of Mathematics in the Royal Indian Engineering College. New Edition, greatly enlarged. 8vo. *18s.*

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN THE USE OF SEVEN-FIGURE LOGARITHMS. By the same Author. [*In preparation.*

SCIENCE.

(1) Natural Philosophy, (2) Astronomy, (3) Chemistry, (4) Biology, (5) Medicine, (6) Anthropology, (7) Physical Geography and Geology, (8) Agriculture, (9) Political Economy, (10) Mental and Moral Philosophy.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

Airy.—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal :—

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS. With the Mathematical Elements of Music. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *9s.*

A TREATISE ON MAGNETISM. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Crown 8vo. *9s. 6d.*

Airy (Osmond).—A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL OPTICS. Adapted for the Use of the Higher Classes in Schools. By OSMUND AIRY, B.A., one of the Mathematical Masters in Wellington College. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Alexander (T.).—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. Being the simpler and more practical Cases of Stress and Strain wrought out individually from first principles by means of Elementary Mathematics. By T. ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Civil Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan. Crown 8vo. Part I. *4s. 6d.*

Alexander — Thomson. — ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. By THOMAS ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan; and ARTHUR WATSON THOMSON, C.E., B.Sc., Professor of Engineering at the Royal College, Cirencester. Part II. TRANSVERSE STRESS; upwards of 150 Diagrams, and 200 Examples carefully worked out; new and complete method for finding, at every point of a beam, the amount of the greatest bending moment and shearing force during the transit of any set of loads fixed relatively to one another—*e.g.*, the wheels of a locomotive; continuous beams, &c., &c. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Awdry.—EASY LESSONS ON LIGHT. By Mrs. W. AWDRY. Illustrated. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Ball (R. S.).—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS. A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By R. S. BALL, M.A., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science for Ireland. Cheaper Issue. Royal 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Chisholm.—THE SCIENCE OF WEIGHING AND MEASURING, AND THE STANDARDS OF MEASURE AND WEIGHT. By H. W. CHISHOLM, Warden of the Standards. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*

Clausius.—MECHANICAL THEORY OF HEAT. By R. CLAUSIUS. Translated by WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Cotterill.—A TREATISE ON APPLIED MECHANICS. By JAMES COTTERILL, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Applied Mechanics at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. With Illustrations. 8vo. [*Immediately.*

Cumming.—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE THEORY OF ELECTRICITY. By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A., one of the Masters of Rugby School. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Daniell.—A TEXT-BOOK OF THE PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS. By ALFRED DANIELL, M.A., D.Sc., Lecturer on Physics in the School of Medicine, Edinburgh. With Illustrations. Medium 8vo. *21s.*

Day.—ELECTRIC LIGHT ARITHMETIC. By R. E. DAY, M.A., Evening Lecturer in Experimental Physics at King's College, London. Pott 8vo. *2s.*

Everett.—UNITS AND PHYSICAL CONSTANTS. By J. D. EVERETT, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Queen's College, Belfast. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Gray.—ABSOLUTE MEASUREMENTS IN ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By ANDREW GRAY, M.A., F.R.S.E., Chief Assistant to the Professor of Natural History in the University of Glasgow. Pott 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Huxley.—INTRODUCTORY PRIMER OF SCIENCE. By T. H. HUXLEY, P.R.S., Professor of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines, &c. 18mo. *1s.*

Kempe.—HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE; a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Kennedy.—MECHANICS OF MACHINERY. By A. B. W. KENNEDY, M.Inst.C.E., Professor of Engineering and Mechanical Technology in University College, London. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Lang.—EXPERIMENTAL PHYSICS. By P. R. SCOTT LANG. M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of St. Andrews. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Lupton.—NUMERICAL TABLES AND CONSTANTS IN ELEMENTARY SCIENCE. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., F.C.S., F.I.C., Assistant Master at Harrow School. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Macfarlane.—PHYSICAL ARITHMETIC. By ALEXANDER MACFARLANE, D.Sc., Examiner in Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. [*In the press.*

Martineau (Miss C. A.).—EASY LESSONS ON HEAT. By Miss C. A. MARTINEAU. Illustrated. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Mayer.—SOUND: a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Sound, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER, Professor of Physics in the Stevens Institute of Technology, &c. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Mayer and Barnard.—LIGHT: a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Light, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER and C. BARNARD. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Newton.—PRINCIPIA. Edited by Professor Sir W. THOMSON and Professor BLACKBURNE. 4to, cloth. 31*s.* 6*d.*

THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA. With Notes and Illustrations. Also a Collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

Parkinson.—A TREATISE ON OPTICS. By S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Perry.—STEAM. AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By JOHN PERRY, C.E., Whitworth Scholar, Fellow of the Chemical Society, Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Ramsay.—EXPERIMENTAL PROOFS OF CHEMICAL THEORY FOR BEGINNERS. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in University College, Bristol. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Rayleigh.—THE THEORY OF SOUND. By LORD RAYLEIGH, M.A., F.R.S., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, 8vo. Vol. I. 12*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. 12*s.* 6*d.* [Vol. III. *in the press.*

Reuleaux.—THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY. Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. W. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

Shann.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT, IN RELATION TO STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE. By G. SHANN, M.A. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Spottiswoode.—POLARISATION OF LIGHT. By the late W. SPOTTISWOODE, P.R.S. With many Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Stewart (Balfour).—Works by BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester.

PRIMER OF PHYSICS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, with Questions. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

Stewart (Balfour).—Works by (*continued*)—

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUESTIONS ON BALFOUR STEWART'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICS. By Prof. THOMAS H. CORE, Owens College, Manchester. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.*

Stewart—Gee.—PRACTICAL PHYSICS, ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN. By Professor BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., and W. HALDANE GEE. Fcap. 8vo.

Part I. General Physics. [*Nearly ready.*
Part II. Optics, Heat, and Sound. [*In preparation.*
Part III. Electricity and Magnetism. [*In preparation.*

Stokes.—ON LIGHT. Burnett Lectures. First Course. ON THE NATURE OF LIGHT. Delivered in Aberdeen in November 1883. By GEORGE GABRIEL STOKES, M.A., F.R.S., &c., Fellow of Pembroke College, and Lucasian Professor of Mathematics in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Stone.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SOUND. By W. H. STONE, M.B. With Illustrations. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Tait.—HEAT. By P. G. TAIT, M.A., Sec. R.S.E., Formerly Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Thompson.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By SILVANUS P. THOMPSON. Professor of Experimental Physics in University College, Bristol. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Thomson.—ELECTROSTATICS AND MAGNETISM, REPRINTS OF PAPERS ON. By Sir WILLIAM THOMSON, D.C.L., LL.D., F.R.S., F.R.S.E., Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Glasgow. Second Edition. Medium 8vo. 18*s.*

Thomson.—THE MOTION OF VORTEX RINGS, A TREATISE ON. An Essay to which the Adams Prize was adjudged in 1882 in the University of Cambridge. By J. J. THOMSON, Fellow and Assistant-Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Diagrams. 8vo. 6*s.*

Todhunter.—NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc.

Part I. The Properties of Solid and Fluid Bodies. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Part II. Sound, Light, and Heat. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Wright (Lewis). — LIGHT; A COURSE OF EXPERIMENTAL OPTICS, CHIEFLY WITH THE LANTERN. By LEWIS WRIGHT. With nearly 200 Engravings and Coloured Plates. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

ASTRONOMY.

Airy.—POPULAR ASTRONOMY. With Illustrations by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal. New Edition. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

Forbes.—TRANSIT OF VENUS. By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Godfray.—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M.A., Mathematical Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge.

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY, with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

Lockyer.—Works by J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S.

PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ, and numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. For the Use of Schools. By JOHN FORBES-ROBERTSON. 18mo, cloth limp. *1s. 6d.*

THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS. With Coloured Plate and numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Newcomb.—POPULAR ASTRONOMY. By S. NEWCOMB, LL.D., Professor U.S. Naval Observatory. With 112 Illustrations and 5 Maps of the Stars. Second Edition, revised. 8vo. *18s.*

"It is unlike anything else of its kind, and will be of more use in circulating a knowledge of Astronomy than nine-tenths of the books which have appeared on the subject of late years."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

CHEMISTRY.

Fleischer.—A SYSTEM OF VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS. Translated, with Notes and Additions, from the Second German Edition, by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Jones.—Works by FRANCIS JONES, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester.

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. With Preface by Professor ROSCOE, and Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

QUESTIONS ON CHEMISTRY. A Series of Problems and Exercises in Inorganic and Organic Chemistry. Fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

Landauer.—BLOWPIPE ANALYSIS. By J. LANDAUER. Authorised English Edition by J. TAYLOR and W. E. KAY, of Owens College, Manchester. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Lupton.—ELEMENTARY CHEMICAL ARITHMETIC. With 1,100 Problems. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow. Extra fcap. 8vo. *5s.*

Muir.—PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS. Specially arranged for the first M.B. Course. By M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

Roscoe.—Works by H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S. Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester.

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. With Questions. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers*).

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, INORGANIC AND ORGANIC. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Solar Spectrum, and of the Alkalies and Alkaline Earths. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to the foregoing, by T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds, Adapted for the Preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S. New Edition, with Key. 18mo. *2s.*

Roscoe and Schorlemmer.—INORGANIC AND ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. A Complete Treatise on Inorganic and Organic Chemistry. By Professor H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Professor C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo.

Vols. I. and II.—INORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

Vol. I.—The Non-Metallic Elements. *21s.* Vol. II. Part I.—Metals. *18s.* Vol. II. Part II.—Metals. *18s.*

Vol. III.—ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. Two Parts.

THE CHEMISTRY OF THE HYDROCARBONS and their Derivatives, or ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. *21s.* each.

Schorlemmer.—A MANUAL OF THE CHEMISTRY OF THE CARBON COMPOUNDS, OR ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With Illustrations. 8vo. 14*s.*

Thorpe.—A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to Professor Roscoe's Lessons in Elementary Chemistry, by T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds, adapted for the Preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROSCOE. New Edition, with Key. 18mo. 2*s.*

Thorpe and Rücker.—A TREATISE ON CHEMICAL PHYSICS. By Professor THORPE, F.R.S., and Professor RÜCKER, of the Yorkshire College of Science. Illustrated. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Wright.—METALS AND THEIR CHIEF INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS. By C. ALDER WRIGHT, D.Sc., &c., Lecturer on Chemistry in St. Mary's Hospital Medical School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

BIOLOGY.

Allen.—ON THE COLOUR OF FLOWERS, as Illustrated in the British Flora. By GRANT ALLEN. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Balfour.—A TREATISE ON COMPARATIVE EMBRYOLOGY. By F. M. BALFOUR, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Illustrations. In 2 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 18*s.* Vol. II. 21*s.*

Bettany.—FIRST LESSONS IN PRACTICAL BOTANY. By G. T. BETTANY, M.A., F.L.S., Lecturer in Botany at Guy's Hospital Medical School. 18mo. 1*s.*

Darwin (Charles).—MEMORIAL NOTICES OF CHARLES DARWIN, F.R.S., &c. By Professor HUXLEY, P.R.S., G. J. ROMANES, F.R.S., ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., and W. T. THISELTON DYER, F.R.S. Reprinted from *Nature.* With a Portrait, engraved by C. H. JEENS. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Dyer and Vines.—THE STRUCTURE OF PLANTS. By Professor THISELTON DYER, F.R.S., assisted by SYDNEY VINES, D.Sc., Fellow and Lecturer of Christ's College, Cambridge, and F. O. BOWER, M.A., Lecturer in the Normal School of Science. With numerous Illustrations. *[In the press.*

Flower (W. H.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA. Being the substance of the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England in 1870. By Professor W. H. FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Foster.—Works by MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., **F.R.S.**, Professor of Physiology in the University of Cambridge.

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.*

A TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY. With Illustrations. Fourth Edition, revised. 8vo. 21*s.*

Foster and Balfour.—THE ELEMENTS OF EMBRYOLOGY. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.A., M.D., LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Cambridge, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the late FRANCIS M. BALFOUR, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Professor of Animal Morphology in the University. Second Edition, revised. Edited by ADAM SEDGWICK, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge, and WALTER HEAPE, Demonstrator in the Morphological Laboratory of the University of Cambridge. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Foster and Langley.—A COURSE OF ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY. By Prof. MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., &c., and J. N. LANGLEY, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Gamgee.—A TEXT-BOOK OF THE PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY OF THE ANIMAL BODY. Including an Account of the Chemical Changes occurring in Disease. By A. GAMGEE, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. 2 Vols. 8vo. With Illustrations. Vol. I. 18*s.* *[Vol. II. in the press.*

Gegenbaur.—ELEMENTS OF COMPARATIVE ANATOMY. By Professor CARL GEGENBAUR. A Translation by F. JEFFREY BELL, B.A. Revised with Preface by Professor E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. 21*s.*

Gray.—STRUCTURAL BOTANY, OR ORGANOGRAPHY ON THE BASIS OF MORPHOLOGY. To which are added the principles of Taxonomy and Phytography, and a Glossary of Botanical Terms. By Professor ASA GRAY, LL.D. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Hooker.—Works by Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., M.D., F.R.S., D.C.L.

PRIMER OF BOTANY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS. New Edition, revised. Globe 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Huxley.—Works by Professor HUXLEY, P.R.S.

INTRODUCTORY PRIMER OF SCIENCE. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS. By T. ALCOCK, M.D. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

PRIMER OF ZOOLOGY. 18mo. (*Science Primers.*)

[*In preparation.*

Huxley and Martin.—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By Professor HUXLEY, P.R.S., assisted by H. N. MARTIN, M.B., D.Sc. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Lankester.—Works by Professor E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S.

A TEXT BOOK OF ZOOLOGY. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

DEGENERATION: A CHAPTER IN DARWINISM. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Lubbock.—Works by SIR JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S., D.C.L.

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

ON BRITISH WILD FLOWERS CONSIDERED IN RELATION TO INSECTS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series*).

M'Kendrick.—OUTLINES OF PHYSIOLOGY IN ITS RELATIONS TO MAN. By J. G. M'KENDRICK, M.D., F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Martin and Moale.—ON THE DISSECTION OF VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. By Professor H. N. MARTIN and W. A. MOALE. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

(See also page 41.)

Miall.—STUDIES IN COMPARATIVE ANATOMY.

No. I.—The Skull of the Crocodile: a Manual for Students. By L. C. MIALL, Professor of Biology in the Yorkshire College and Curator of the Leeds Museum. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

No. II.—Anatomy of the Indian Elephant. By L. C. MIALL and F. GREENWOOD. With Illustrations. 8vo. *5s.*

Mivart.—Works by ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S. Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

THE COMMON FROG. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Müller.—THE FERTILISATION OF FLOWERS. By Professor HERMANN MÜLLER. Translated and Edited by D'ARCY W. THOMPSON, B.A., Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. With a Preface by CHARLES DARWIN, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. *21s.*

Oliver.—Works by DANIEL OLIVER, F.R.S., &c., Professor of Botany in University College, London, &c.

FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY. With nearly 200 Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Parker.—A COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN ZOOTOMY (VERTEBRATA). By T. JEFFREY PARKER, B.Sc. London, Professor of Biology in the University of Otago, New Zealand. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

Parker and Bettany.—THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE SKULL. By Professor PARKER and G. T. BETTANY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Romanes.—THE SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCES OF ORGANIC EVOLUTION. By G. J. ROMANES, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S., Zoological Secretary to the Linnean Society. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

Smith.—Works by JOHN SMITH, A.L.S., &c.

A DICTIONARY OF ECONOMIC PLANTS. Their History, Products, and Uses. 8vo. *14s.*

DOMESTIC BOTANY: An Exposition of the Structure and Classification of Plants, and their Uses for Food, Clothing, Medicine, and Manufacturing Purposes. With Illustrations. New Issue. Crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

MEDICINE.

Brunton.—Works by T. LAUDER BRUNTON, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.C.P., F.R.S., Examiner in Materia Medica in the University of London, late Examiner in Materia Medica in the University of Edinburgh, and the Royal College of Physicians, London.

A TREATISE ON MATERIA MEDICA. 8vo. [*In the press.*

TABLES OF MATERIA MEDICA: A Companion to the Materia Medica Museum. With Illustrations. New Edition Enlarged. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Hamilton.—A TEXT-BOOK OF PATHOLOGY. By D. J. HAMILTON, Professor of Pathological Anatomy (Sir Erasmus Wilson Chair), University of Aberdeen. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Ziegler-Macalister.—TEXT-BOOK OF PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY AND PATHOGENESIS. By Professor ERNST ZIEGLER of Tübingen. Translated and Edited for English Students by DONALD MACALISTER, M.A., M.B., B.Sc., M.R.C.P., Fellow and Medical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. Part I.—GENERAL PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Part II.—SPECIAL PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY. Sections I.—VIII. 12*s.* 6*d.* [PART III. *in preparation.*

ANTHROPOLOGY.

Flower.—FASHION IN DEFORMITY, as Illustrated in the Customs of Barbarous and Civilised Races. By Professor FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series*).

Tylor.—ANTHROPOLOGY. An Introduction to the Study of Man and Civilisation. By E. B. TYLOR, D.C.L., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY & GEOLOGY.

Blanford.—THE RUDIMENTS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY FOR THE USE OF INDIAN SCHOOLS; with a Glossary of Technical Terms employed. By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. New Edition, with Illustrations. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Geikie.—Works by ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., Director General of the Geological Surveys of the United Kingdom.

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. With Questions. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. With numerous Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUESTIONS ON THE SAME. 1*s.* 6*d.*

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN GEOLOGY. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

TEXT-BOOK OF GEOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. 28*s.*

OUTLINES OF FIELD GEOLOGY. With Illustrations. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Huxley.—PHYSIOGRAPHY. An Introduction to the Study of Nature. By Professor HUXLEY, P.R.S. With numerous Illustrations, and Coloured Plates. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Phillips.—ORE DEPOSITS: their Formation and Yield. By J. ARTHUR PHILLIPS, F.R.S., F.G.S., F.C.S., M.Inst.C.E., Ancien Élève de l'École des Mines, Paris. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. [*In the press.*

AGRICULTURE.

Frankland.—AGRICULTURAL CHEMICAL ANALYSIS, A Handbook of. By PERCY FARADAY FRANKLAND, Ph.D., B.Sc., F.C.S., Associate of the Royal School of Mines, and Demonstrator of Practical and Agricultural Chemistry in the Normal School of Science and Royal School of Mines, South Kensington Museum. Founded upon *Leitfaden für die Agricultur-Chemische Analyse*, von Dr. F. KROCKER. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Tanner.—Works by HENRY TANNER, F.C.S., M.R.A.C., Examiner in the Principles of Agriculture under the Government Department of Science; Director of Education in the Institute of Agriculture, South Kensington, London; sometime Professor of Agricultural Science, University College, Aberystwith.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN THE SCIENCE OF AGRICULTURAL PRACTICE. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

FIRST PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE. 18mo. 1*s.*

Tanner.—Works by HENRY TANNER, F.C.S., &c. (*continued*).

THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE. A Series of Reading Books for use in Elementary Schools. Prepared by HENRY TANNER, F.C.S., M.R.A.C. Extra fcap. 8vo.

I. The Alphabet of the Principles of Agriculture. *6d.*
II. Further Steps in the Principles of Agriculture. *1s.*
III. Elementary School Readings on the Principles of Agriculture for the third stage. *1s.*

POLITICAL ECONOMY.

Cossa.—GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Dr. LUIGI COSSA, Professor in the University of Pavia. Translated from the Second Italian Edition. With a Preface by W. STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Fawcett (Mrs.).—Works by MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT:—

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS, WITH QUESTIONS. Fourth Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

Fawcett.—A MANUAL OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Right Hon. HENRY FAWCETT, M.P., F.R.S. Sixth Edition, revised, with a chapter on "State Socialism and the Nationalisation of the Land," and an Index. Crown 8vo. *12s.*

Jevons.—PRIMER OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers.*)

Marshall.—THE ECONOMICS OF INDUSTRY. By A. MARSHALL, M.A., late Principal of University College, Bristol, and MARY P. MARSHALL, late Lecturer at Newnham Hall, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Sidgwick.—THE PRINCIPLES OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Professor HENRY SIDGWICK, M.A., LL.D. Knightbridge Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Cambridge, &c., Author of "The Methods of Ethics." 8vo. *16s.*

Walker.—POLITICAL ECONOMY. By FRANCIS A. WALKER, M.A., Ph.D., Author of "The Wages Question," "Money," "Money in its Relation to Trade," &c. 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

MENTAL & MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

Caird.—MORAL PHILOSOPHY, An Elementary Treatise on. By Prof. E. CAIRD, of Glasgow University. Fcap. 8vo.
[*In preparation.*

Calderwood.—HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY. By the Rev. HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy, University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s*.

Clifford.—SEEING AND THINKING. By the late Professor W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S. With Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*. (*Nature Series*.)

Jevons.—Works by the late W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S.

PRIMER OF LOGIC. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s*. (*Science Primers*.)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC; Deductive and Inductive, with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of Logical Terms. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

THE PRINCIPLES OF SCIENCE. A Treatise on Logic and Scientific Method. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 12*s*. 6*d*.

STUDIES IN DEDUCTIVE LOGIC. Crown 8vo. 6*s*.

Keynes.—FORMAL LOGIC, Studies and Exercises in. Including a Generalisation of Logical Processes in their application to Complex Inferences. By JOHN NEVILLE KEYNES, M.A., late Fellow of Pembroke College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s*. 6*d*.

Robertson.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PSYCHOLOGY. By G. CROOM ROBERTSON, Professor of Mental Philosophy, &c., University College, London. [*In preparation*.

Sidgwick.—THE METHODS OF ETHICS. By Professor HENRY SIDGWICK, M.A., LL.D. Cambridge, &c. Second Edition. 8vo. 14*s*.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

Arnold.—THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. By W. T. ARNOLD, B.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s*.

"Ought to prove a valuable handbook to the student of Roman history."—GUARDIAN.

Beesly.—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME. By Mrs. BEESLY. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

"The attempt appears to us in every way successful. The stories are interesting in themselves, and are told with perfect simplicity and good feeling."—DAILY NEWS.

Brook.—FRENCH HISTORY FOR ENGLISH CHILDREN. By SARAH BROOK. With Coloured Maps. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Clarke.—CLASS-BOOK OF GEOGRAPHY. By C. B. CLARKE, M.A., F.L.S., F.G.S., F.R.S. New Edition, with Eighteen Coloured Maps. Fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

Freeman.—OLD-ENGLISH HISTORY. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. With Five Coloured Maps. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *6s.*

Fyffe.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Green.—Works by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., late Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford.

SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. With Coloured Maps, Genealogical Tables, and Chronological Annals. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* 100th Thousand.

"Stands alone as the one general history of the country, for the sake of which all others, if young and old are wise, will be speedily and surely set aside."—ACADEMY.

ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY, based on Green's "Short History of the English People." By C. W. A. TAIT, M.A., Assistant-Master, Clifton College. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

READINGS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. Selected and Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN. Three Parts. Globe 8vo. *1s. 6d.* each. I. Hengist to Cressy. II. Cressy to Cromwell. III. Cromwell to Balaklava.

A SHORT GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS. By JOHN RICHARD GREEN and ALICE STOPFORD GREEN. With Maps. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Grove.—A PRIMER OF GEOGRAPHY. By Sir GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L., F.R.G.S. With Illustrations. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers.*)

Guest.—LECTURES ON THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By M. J. GUEST. With Maps. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

"It is not too much to assert that this is one of the very best class books of English History for young students ever published."—SCOTSMAN.

Historical Course for Schools—Edited by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford.

I.—GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Chronological Table, Maps, and Index. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

Historical Course for Schools. *Continued*—

II.—HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By EDITH THOMPSON. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Coloured Maps. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

III.—HISTORY OF SCOTLAND. By MARGARET MACARTHUR. New Edition. 18mo. *2s.*

IV.—HISTORY OF ITALY. By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A. New Edition, with Coloured Maps. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

V.—HISTORY OF GERMANY. By J. SIME, M.A. 18mo. *3s.*

VI.—HISTORY OF AMERICA. By JOHN A. DOYLE. With Maps. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

VII.—EUROPEAN COLONIES. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With Maps. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

VIII.—FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. With Maps. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

GREECE. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. [*In preparation.*

ROME. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. [*In preparation.*

History Primers—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ROME. By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Merton College, Oxford. With Eleven Maps. 18mo. *1s.*

"The author has been curiously successful in telling in an intelligent way the story of Rome from first to last."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow and late Tutor of University College, Oxford. With Five Maps. 18mo. *1s.*

"We give our unqualified praise to this little manual."—SCHOOLMASTER.

EUROPEAN HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D. With Maps. 18mo. *1s.*

"The work is always clear, and forms a luminous key to European history."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated. 18mo. *1s.*

"All that is necessary for the scholar to know is told so compactly yet so fully, and in a style so interesting, that it is impossible for even the dullest boy to look on this little work in the same light as he regards his other school books."—SCHOOLMASTER.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 18mo. *1s.*

"Another valuable aid to the study of the ancient world. . . . It contains an enormous quantity of information packed into a small space, and at the same time communicated in a very readable shape."—JOHN BULL.

History Primers *Continued*—

GEOGRAPHY. By Sir GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L. With Maps. 18mo. 1*s*.

"A model of what such a work should be. . . . We know of no short treatise better suited to infuse life and spirit into the dull lists of proper names of which our ordinary class-books so often almost exclusively consist."—TIMES.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. 1*s*.

"A little book that throws a blaze of light on Roman history, and is, moreover intensely interesting."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. 18mo. 1*s*.

"May be considered a wonderfully successful piece of work. . . . Its general merit as a vigorous and clear sketch, giving in a small space a vivid idea of the history of France, remains undeniable."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Hole.—A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE. By the Rev. C. HOLE. On Sheet. 1*s*.

Kiepert—A MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. From the German of Dr. H. KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5*s*.

Lethbridge.—A SHORT MANUAL OF THE HISTORY OF INDIA. With an Account of INDIA AS IT IS. The Soil, Climate, and Productions; the People, their Races, Religions, Public Works, and Industries; the Civil Services, and System of Administration. By ROPER LETHBRIDGE, M.A., C.I.E., late Scholar of Exeter College, Oxford, formerly Principal of Kishnaghur College, Bengal, Fellow and sometime Examiner of the Calcutta University. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 5*s*.

Michelet.—A SUMMARY OF MODERN HISTORY. Translated from the French of M. MICHELET, and continued to the Present Time, by M. C. M. SIMPSON. Globe 8vo. 4*s*. 6*d*.

Otté.—SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY. By E. C. OTTÉ. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6*s*.

Ramsay.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Tait.—ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY, based on Green's "Short History of the English People." By C. W. A. TAIT, M.A., Assistant-Master, Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Wheeler.—A SHORT HISTORY OF INDIA AND OF THE FRONTIER STATES OF AFGHANISTAN, NEPAUL, AND BURMA. By J. TALBOYS WHEELER. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 12*s*.

"It is the best book of the kind we have ever seen, and we recommend it to a place in every school library."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

Yonge (Charlotte M.).—A PARALLEL HISTORY OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND: consisting of Outlines and Dates. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe," &c., &c. Oblong 4to. 3*s.* 6*d.*

CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.—FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Extra fcap. 8vo. New Edition. 5*s.*

A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.—THE WARS IN FRANCE. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

A THIRD SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.—THE WARS OF THE ROSES. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—A FOURTH SERIES. REFORMATION TIMES. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.—A FIFTH SERIES. ENGLAND AND SPAIN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

EUROPEAN HISTORY. Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities. Edited and arranged by E. M. SEWELL and C. M. YONGE. First Series, 1003—1154. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* Second Series, 1088—1228. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

MODERN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE.

(1) English, (2) French, (3) German, (4) Modern Greek, (5) Italian.

ENGLISH.

Abbott.—A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR. An attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

Brooke.—PRIMER OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By the Rev. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, M.A. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

Butler.—HUDIBRAS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by ALFRED MILNES, M.A. Lon., late Fellow of Lincoln College, Oxford. Extra fcap 8vo. Part I. *3s. 6d.* Parts II. and III. *4s. 6d.*

Cowper's TASK: AN EPISTLE TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.; TIROCINIUM, or a Review of the Schools; and THE HISTORY OF JOHN GILPIN. Edited, with Notes, by WILLIAM BENHAM, B.D. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

Dowden.—SHAKESPEARE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

Dryden.—SELECT PROSE WORKS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor C. D. YONGE. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Gladstone.—SPELLING REFORM FROM AN EDUCATIONAL POINT OF VIEW. By J. H. GLADSTONE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Member of the School Board for London. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

Globe Readers. For Standards I.—VI. Edited by A. F. MURISON. Sometime English Master at the Aberdeen Grammar School. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

Primer I.	(48 pp.) *3d.*	Book III.	(232 pp.) *1s. 3d.*
Primer II.	(48 pp.) *3d.*	Book IV.	(328 pp.) *1s. 9d.*
Book I.	(96 pp.) *6d.*	Book V.	(416 pp.) *2s.*
Book II.	(136 pp.) *9d.*	Book VI.	(448 pp.) *2s. 6d.*

"Among the numerous sets of readers before the public the present series is honourably distinguished by the marked superiority of its materials and the careful ability with which they have been adapted to the growing capacity of the pupils. The plan of the two primers is excellent for facilitating the child's first attempts to read. In the first three following books there is abundance of entertaining reading. . . . . Better food for young minds could hardly be found."—THE ATHENÆUM.

***The Shorter Globe Readers.**—With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

Primer I.	(48 pp.) *3d.*	Standard III.	(178 pp.) *1s.*
Primer II.	(48 pp.) *3d.*	Standard IV.	(182 pp.) *1s.*
Standard I.	(92 pp.) *6d.*	Standard V.	(216 pp.) *1s. 3d.*
Standard II.	(124 pp.) *9d.*	Standard VI.	(228 pp.) *1s. 6d.*

* This Series has been abridged from "The Globe Readers" to meet the demand for smaller reading books.

GLOBE READINGS FROM STANDARD AUTHORS.

Cowper's TASK: AN EPISTLE TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.; TIROCINIUM, or a Review of the Schools; and THE HISTORY OF JOHN GILPIN. Edited, with Notes, by WILLIAM BENHAM, B.D. Globe 8vo. *1s.*

Goldsmith's VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. With a Memoir of Goldsmith by Professor MASSON. Globe 8vo. *1s.*

Lamb's (Charles) TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE Edited, with Preface, by ALFRED AINGER, M.A. Globe 8vo. *2s.*

Scott's (Sir Walter) LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL; and THE LADY OF THE LAKE. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. Globe 8vo. *1s.*

MARMION; and the LORD OF THE ISLES. By the same Editor. Globe 8vo. *1s.*

The Children's Garland from the Best Poets.—Selected and arranged by COVENTRY PATMORE. Globe 8vo. *2s.*

Yonge (Charlotte M.).—A BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS OF ALL TIMES AND ALL COUNTRIES. Gathered and narrated anew by CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Globe 8vo. *2s.*

Goldsmith.—THE TRAVELLER, or a Prospect of Society; and THE DESERTED VILLAGE. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Notes, Philological and Explanatory, by J. W. HALES, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6d.*

THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. With a Memoir of Goldsmith by Professor MASSON. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

SELECT ESSAYS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor C. D. YONGE. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Hales.—LONGER ENGLISH POEMS, with Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for Use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Johnson's LIVES OF THE POETS. The Six Chief Lives (Milton, Dryden, Swift, Addison, Pope, Gray), with Macaulay's "Life of Johnson." Edited with Preface by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Lamb (Charles).—TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE. Edited, with Preface, by ALFRED AINGER, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

Literature Primers—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By Professor NICHOL. 18mo. 1*s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., sometime President of the Philological Society. 18mo, cloth. 1*s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. 1*s.*

EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, of the Middle School, Liverpool College. 18mo. 1*s.*

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.*

SHAKSPERE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1*s.*

THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. 18mo. 1*s.* each.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. 1*s.*

In preparation:—

HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By J. A. H. MURRAY, LL.D.

SPECIMENS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. To Illustrate the above. By the same Author.

Macmillan's Reading Books.—Adapted to the English and Scotch Codes. Bound in Cloth.

PRIMER. 18mo. (48 pp.) 2*d.*

BOOK	I. for Standard	I.	18mo.	(96 pp.)	4*d.*
,,	II. ,,	II.	18mo.	(144 pp.)	5*d.*
,,	III. ,,	III.	18mo.	(160 pp.)	6*d.*
,,	IV. ,,	IV.	18mo.	(176 pp.)	8*d.*
,,	V. ,,	V.	18mo.	(380 pp.)	1*s.*

Macmillan's Reading-Books *Continued*—

BOOK VI. for Standard VI. Crown 8vo. (430 pp.) *2s.*

Book VI. is fitted for higher Classes, and as an Introduction to English Literature.

"They are far above any others that have appeared both in form and substance. . . The editor of the present series has rightly seen that reading books must aim chiefly at giving to the pupils the power of accurate, and, if possible, apt and skilful expression; at cultivating in them a good literary taste, and at arousing a desire of further reading.' This is done by taking care to select the extracts from true English classics, going up in Standard VI. course to Chaucer, Hooker, and Bacon, as well as Wordsworth, Macaulay, and Froude. . . . This is quite on the right track, and indicates justly the ideal which we ought to set before us."—GUARDIAN.

Macmillan's Copy-Books—

Published in two sizes, viz. :—

1. Large Post 4to. Price *4d.* each.
2. Post Oblong. Price *2d.* each.

1. INITIATORY EXERCISES AND SHORT LETTERS.
2. WORDS CONSISTING OF SHORT LETTERS.
*3. LONG LETTERS. With words containing Long Letters—Figures.
*4. WORDS CONTAINING LONG LETTERS.
4a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 1 to 4.
*5. CAPITALS AND SHORT HALF-TEXT. Words beginning with a Capital.
*6. HALF-TEXT WORDS beginning with Capitals—Figures.
*7. SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT. With Capitals and Figures.
*8. SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT. With Capitals and Figures.
8a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 5 to 8.
*9. SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES—Figures.
10. SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES—Figures.
11. SMALL-HAND DOUBLE HEADLINES—Figures.
12. COMMERCIAL AND ARITHMETICAL EXAMPLES, &c.
12a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 8 to 12.

* *These numbers may be had with Goodman's Patent Sliding Copies.* Large Post 4to. Price *6d.* each.

Martin.—THE POET'S HOUR: Poetry selected and arranged for Children. By FRANCES MARTIN. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

SPRING-TIME WITH THE POETS: Poetry selected by FRANCES MARTIN. New Edition. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

Milton.—By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

Morris.—Works by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D.

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-formation. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *6s.*

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, containing Accidence and Word-formation. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 18mo. *1s.* (See also *Literature Primers.*)

Oliphant.—THE OLD AND MIDDLE ENGLISH. A New Edition of "THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH," revised and greatly enlarged. By T. L. KINGTON OLIPHANT. Extra fcap. 8vo. *9s.*

Palgrave.—THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged, with Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. 18mo. *2s. 6d.* Also in Two Parts. 18mo. *1s.* each.

Patmore.—THE CHILDREN'S GARLAND FROM THE BEST POET'S. Selected and arranged by COVENTRY PATMORE. Globe 8vo. *2s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

Plutarch.—Being a Selection from the Lives which Illustrate Shakespeare. North's Translation. Edited, with Introductions, Notes, Index of Names, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Scott's (Sir Walter) LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL; and THE LADY OF THE LAKE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

MARMION; and THE LORD OF THE ISLES. By the same Editor. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

Shakespeare.—A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL. By F. G. FLEAY, M.A., late Head Master of Skipton Grammar School. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

AN ATTEMPT TO DETERMINE THE CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF SHAKESPEARE'S PLAYS. By the Rev. H. PAINE STOKES, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE TEMPEST. With Glossarial and Explanatory Notes. By the Rev. J. M. JEPHSON. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.*

PRIMER OF SHAKESPEARE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

Sonnenschein and Meiklejohn. — THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ. By A. SONNENSCHEIN and J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo.

COMPRISING:

THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two-Letter Words in the Language. 1*d.* (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls. 5*s.*)

THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants. 6*d.*

THE SECOND COURSE, with Combinations and Bridges, consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 6*d.*

THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language. 6*d.*

"These are admirable books, because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English."—SPECTATOR.

Taylor.—WORDS AND PLACES; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A. Third and Cheaper Edition, revised and compressed. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6*s.*

Tennyson.—The COLLECTED WORKS of ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON, Poet Laureate. An Edition for Schools. In Four Parts. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

Thring.—THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH. By EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham. With Questions. Fourth Edition. 18mo. 2*s.*

Trench (Archbishop).—Works by R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF ENGLISH POETRY, Selected and Arranged, with Notes. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

Trench (Archbishop) Works by, *continued*—

ON THE STUDY OF WORDS. Seventeenth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s*.

ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT. Eleventh Edition, revised and improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s*.

A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS, used formerly in Senses Different from their Present. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 5*s*.

Vaughan (C.M.).—WORDS FROM THE POETS. By C. M. VAUGHAN. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. 1*s*.

Ward.—THE ENGLISH POETS. Selections, with Critical Introductions by various Writers and a General Introduction by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Edited by T. H. WARD, M.A. 4 Vols. Vol. I. CHAUCER TO DONNE.—Vol. II. BEN JONSON TO DRYDEN.—Vol. III. ADDISON TO BLAKE.—Vol. IV. WORDSWORTH TO ROSSETTI. Crown 8vo. Each 7*s*. 6*d*.

Wetherell.—EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, M.A. 18mo. 1*s*. (*Literature Primers.*)

Wrightson.—THE FUNCTIONAL ELEMENTS OF AN ENGLISH SENTENCE, an Examination of. Together with a New System of Analytical Marks. By the Rev. W. G. WRIGHTSON, M.A., Cantab. Crown 8vo. 5*s*.

Yonge (Charlotte M.).—THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS. A Reading Book for Schools and general readers. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo, cloth. 1*s*.

GLOBE READINGS EDITION. Complete Edition. Globe 8vo. 2*s*. (See p. 53.)

FRENCH.

Beaumarchais.—LE BARBIER DE SEVILLE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by L. P. BLOUET, Assistant Master in St. Paul's School. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Bowen.—FIRST LESSONS IN FRENCH. By H. COURTHOPE BOWEN, M.A., Principal of the Finsbury Training College for Higher and Middle Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s*.

Breymann.—Works by HERMANN BREYMANN, Ph.D., Professor of Philology in the University of Munich.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Fasnacht.—THE ORGANIC METHOD OF STUDYING LANGUAGES. By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Author of "Macmillan's Progressive French Course," Editor of "Macmillan's Foreign School Classics," &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. I. French. *3s. 6d.*

A SYNTHETIC FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

GRAMMAR AND GLOSSARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Macmillan's Primary Series of French and German Reading Books.—Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Assistant-Master in Westminster School. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

PERRAULT—CONTES DE FÉES. Edtied, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by G. E. FASNACHT. [*In the press.*

LA FONTAINE—SELECT FABLES. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by L. M. MORIARTY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rossall. [*In preparation.*

GRIMM—HAUSMÄRCHEN. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by G. E. FASNACHT. [*In preparation.*

G. SCHWAB—ODYSSEUS. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

Macmillan's Progressive French Course.—By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Assistant-Master in Westminster School.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s.*

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing an Elementary Grammar with copious Exercises, Notes, and Vocabularies. A new Edition, enlarged and thoroughly revised. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s.*

III.—THIRD YEAR, containing a Systematic Syntax, and Lessons in Composition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

THE TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE. Third Year. With Copious Notes, Hints for Different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, &c. By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Macmillan's Progressive French Readers.—By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Fables, Historical Extracts, Letters, Dialogues, Fables, Ballads, Nursery Songs, &c., with Two Vocabularies: (1) in the order of subjects; (2) in alphabetical order. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing Fiction in Prose and Verse, Historical and Descriptive Extracts, Essays, Letters, Dialogues, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Macmillan's Foreign School Classics.—Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT. 18mo.

FRENCH.

CORNEILLE—LE CID. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

DUMAS—LES DEMOISELLES DE ST. CYR. Edited by VICTOR OGER, Lecturer in University College, Liverpool. [*In preparation.*

MOLIÈRE—LES FEMMES SAVANTES. By G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE MISANTHROPE. By the same Editor. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE MÉDECIN MALGRÉ LUI. By the same Editor. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—L'AVARE. Edited by L. M. MORIARTY, B.A., Assistant-Master at Rossall. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE BOURGEOIS GENTILHOMME. By the same Editor. *1s. 6d.*

RACINE—BRITANNICUS. Edited by EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, Assistant-Master in Clifton College, and Lecturer in University College, Bristol. [*In preparation.*

SCENES IN ROMAN HISTORY. SELECTED FROM FRENCH HISTORIANS. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Harrow. [*In preparation.*

SAND, GEORGE—LA MARE AU DIABLE. Edited by W. E. RUSSELL, M.A., Assistant Master in Haileybury College. *1s.*

SANDEAU, JULES—MADEMOISELLE DE LA SEIGLIÈRE. Edited by H. C. STEEL, Assistant Master in Wellington College. [*In the press.*

VOLTAIRE—CHARLES XII. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. [*In the press.*

*** *Other volumes to follow.*

(See also *German Authors*, page 61.)

Masson (Gustave).—A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE (French-English and English-French). Adapted from the Dictionaries of Professor ALFRED ELWALL. Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Derivations, and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables. By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant Master and Librarian, Harrow School. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Moliere.—LE MALADE IMAGINAIRE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by FRANCIS TARVER, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

(See also *Macmillan's Foreign School Classics.*)

GERMAN.

Macmillan's Progressive German Course.—By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

PART I.—FIRST YEAR. Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

PART II.—SECOND YEAR. Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s.*

*** *Keys to the French and German Courses are in preparation.*

Macmillan's Progressive German Readers.—By G. E. FASNACHT. First Year. [*In the press.*

Macmillan's Primary German Reading Books.
(See page 59.)

Macmillan's Foreign School Classics. Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT. 18mo.

GERMAN.

GOETHE—GÖTZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited by H. A. BULL, M.A., Assistant Master at Wellington College. *2s.*

GOETHE—FAUST. PART I. Edited by JANE LEE, Lecturer in Modern Languages at Newnham College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

HEINE—SELECTIONS FROM THE REISEBILDER AND OTHER PROSE WORKS. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

SCHILLER—DIE JUNGFRAU VON ORLEANS. Edited by JOSEPH GOSTWICK. *2s. 6d.*

SCHILLER—MARIA STUART. Edited by C. SHELDON, M.A., D.Lit., Senior Modern Language Master in Clifton College. *2s. 6d*

Foreign School Classics (German) *Continued—*

SCHILLER—WILHELM TELL. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. [*In preparation.*

UHLAND—SELECT BALLADS. Adapted as a First Easy Reading Book for Beginners. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. 1*s.*

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

(See also *French Authors*, page 60.)

Pylodet.—NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION; containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words; followed by Exercises; Vocabulary of Words in frequent use; Familiar Phrases and Dialogues; a Sketch of German Literature, Idiomatic Expressions, &c. By L. PYLODET. 18mo, cloth limp. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A SYNOPSIS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR. From the above. 18mo. 6*d.*

Whitney.—Works by W. D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College.

A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE. With Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Whitney and Edgren.—A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY, with Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY, assisted by A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE GERMAN-ENGLISH PART, separately, 5*s.*

MODERN GREEK.

Vincent and Dickson. — HANDBOOK TO MODERN GREEK. By EDGAR VINCENT and T. G. DICKSON, M.A. Second Edition, revised and enlarged, with Appendix on the relation of Modern and Classical Greek by Professor JEBB. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

ITALIAN.

Dante. — THE PURGATORY OF DANTE. Edited, with Translation and Notes, by A. J. BUTLER, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

DOMESTIC ECONOMY.

Barker.—FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING. By LADY BARKER. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.*

Berners.—FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH. By J. BERNERS. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.*

Fawcett.—TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY. By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT. Globe 8vo. 3*s.*

Frederick.—HINTS TO HOUSEWIVES ON SEVERAL POINTS, PARTICULARLY ON THE PREPARATION OF ECONOMICAL AND TASTEFUL DISHES. By Mrs. FREDERICK. Crown 8vo. 1*s.*

"This unpretending and useful little volume distinctly supplies a desideratum. . . . . The author steadily keeps in view the simple aim of 'making every-day meals at home, particularly the dinner, attractive,' without adding to the ordinary household expenses."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Grand'homme.— CUTTING-OUT AND DRESSMAKING. From the French of Mdlle. E. GRAND'HOMME. With Diagrams. 18mo. 1*s.*

Tegetmeier.—HOUSEHOLD MANAGEMENT AND COOKERY. With an Appendix of Recipes used by the Teachers of the National School of Cookery. By W. B TEGETMEIER. Compiled at the request of the School Board for London. 18mo. 1*s.*

Thornton.—FIRST LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING. By J. THORNTON. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The object of this volume is to make the theory of Book-keeping sufficiently plain for even children to understand it.

Wright.—THE SCHOOL COOKERY-BOOK. Compiled and Edited by C. E. GUTHRIE WRIGHT, Hon Sec. to the Edinburgh School of Cookery. 18mo. 1*s.*

ART AND KINDRED SUBJECTS.

Anderson.—LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, AND MODEL DRAWING. A School and Art Class Manual, with Questions and Exercises for Examination, and Examples of Examination Papers. By LAURENCE ANDERSON. With Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 2*s.*

Collier.—A PRIMER OF ART. With Illustrations. By JOHN COLLIER. 18mo. 1*s.*

Delamotte.—A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK. By P. H. DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progressively arranged. New Edition improved. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Ellis.—SKETCHING FROM NATURE. A Handbook for Students and Amateurs. By TRISTRAM J. ELLIS. With a Frontispiece and Ten Illustrations, by H. STACY MARKS, R.A., and Twenty-seven Sketches by the Author. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Art at Home Series.*)

Hunt.—TALKS ABOUT ART. By WILLIAM HUNT. With a Letter from J. E. MILLAIS, R.A. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Taylor.—A PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING. By FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by Sir GEORGE GROVE. 18mo. *1s.*

WORKS ON TEACHING.

Blakiston—THE TEACHER. Hints on School Management. A Handbook for Managers, Teachers' Assistants, and Pupil Teachers. By J. R. BLAKISTON, M.A. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (Recommended by the London, Birmingham, and Leicester School Boards.)

"Into a comparatively small book he has crowded a great deal of exceedingly useful and sound advice. It is a plain, common-sense book, full of hints to the teacher on the management of his school and his children."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

Calderwood—ON TEACHING. By Professor HENRY CALDERWOOD. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Fearon.—SCHOOL INSPECTION. By D. R. FEARON, M.A., Assistant Commissioner of Endowed Schools. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Gladstone.—OBJECT TEACHING. A Lecture delivered at the Pupil-Teacher Centre, William Street Board School, Hammersmith. By J. H. GLADSTONE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Member of the London School Board. With an Appendix. Crown 8vo. *3d.*

"It is a short but interesting and instructive publication, and our younger teachers will do well to read it carefully and thoroughly. There is much in these few pages which they can learn and profit by."—THE SCHOOL GUARDIAN.

DIVINITY.

*** For other Works by these Authors, see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE.

Abbott (Rev. E. A.)—BIBLE LESSONS. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

"Wise, suggestive, and really profound initiation into religious thought."—GUARDIAN.

Arnold. — A BIBLE-READING FOR SCHOOLS. — THE GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION (Isaiah, Chapters xl.—lxvi.). Arranged and Edited for Young Learners. By MATTHEW ARNOLD, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. 1*s.*

ISAIAH XL.—LXVI. With the Shorter Prophecies allied to it. Arranged and Edited, with Notes, by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Benham.—A COMPANION TO THE LECTIONARY. Being a Commentary on the Proper Lessons for Sundays and Holy Days. By Rev. W. BENHAM, B.D., Rector of S. Edmund with S. Nicholas Acons, &c. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Cassel.—MANUAL OF JEWISH HISTORY AND LITERATURE; preceded by a BRIEF SUMMARY OF BIBLE HISTORY. By DR. D. CASSEL. Translated by Mrs. HENRY LUCAS. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Cheetham.—A CHURCH HISTORY OF THE FIRST SIX CENTURIES. By the Ven. ARCHDEACON CHEETHAM. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Curteis.—MANUAL OF THE THIRTY-NINE ARTICLES. By G. H. CURTEIS, M.A., Principal of the Lichfield Theological College. [*In preparation.*

Davies.—THE EPISTLES OF ST. PAUL TO THE EPHESIANS, THE COLOSSIANS, AND PHILEMON; with Introductions and Notes, and an Essay on the Traces of Foreign Elements in the Theology of these Epistles. By the Rev. J. LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A., Rector of Christ Church, St. Marylebone; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Drummond.—THE STUDY OF THEOLOGY, INTRODUCTION TO. By JAMES DRUMMOND, LL.D., Professor of Theology in Manchester New College, London. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Gaskoin.—THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF BIBLE STORIES. By Mrs. HERMAN GASKOIN. Edited with Preface by Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D. PART I.—OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. 18mo. 1*s.* PART II.—NEW TESTAMENT. 18mo. 1*s.* PART III.—THE APOSTLES: ST. JAMES THE GREAT, ST. PAUL, AND ST. JOHN THE DIVINE. 18mo. 1*s.*

Golden Treasury Psalter.—Students' Edition. Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically arranged, by Four Friends," with briefer Notes. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Greek Testament.—Edited, with Introduction and Appendices, by CANON WESTCOTT and Dr. F. J. A. HORT. Two Vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.
Vol. I. The Text.
Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

Greek Testament.—Edited by Canon WESTCOTT and Dr. HORT. School Edition of Text. Globe 8vo. [*In the press.*

The Greek Testament and the English Version, a Companion to. By PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D., President of the American Committee of Revision. With Facsimile Illustrations of MSS., and Standard Editions of the New Testament. Crown 8vo. 12*s.*

Hardwick.—Works by Archdeacon HARDWICK:—
A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. Middle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*
A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION. Fourth Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Jennings and Lowe.—THE PSALMS, WITH INTRODUCTIONS AND CRITICAL NOTES. By A. C. JENNINGS, B.A.; assisted in parts by W. H. LOWE. In 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Lightfoot.—Works by Right Rev. J. B. LIGHTFOOT, D.D., Bishop of Durham:—
ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. Seventh Edition, revised 8vo. 12*s.*
ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. Seventh Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*
ST. CLEMENT OF ROME—THE TWO EPISTLES TO THE CORINTHIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*
ST. PAUL'S EPISTLES TO THE COLOSSIANS AND TO PHILEMON. A Revised Text, with Introductions, Notes, and Dissertations. Sixth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*
THE IGNATIAN EPISTLES. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Maclear.—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Warden of St. Augustine's College, Canterbury, and late Head-Master of King's College School, London :—

A CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. New Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

A CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including the Connection of the Old and New Testaments. With Four Maps. New Edition. 18mo. *5s. 6d.*

A SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo, cloth. New Edition.

A SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo, cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the author's large manuals.

CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. New Edition. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

A FIRST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. With Scripture Proofs, for Junior Classes and Schools. New Edition. 18mo. *6d.*

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS. 32mo, cloth extra, red edges. *2s.*

Maurice.—THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, AND THE COMMANDMENTS. A Manual for Parents and Schoolmasters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures, By the Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A. 18mo, cloth, limp. *1s.*

Procter.—A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER, with a Rationale of its Offices. By Rev. F. PROCTER. M.A. Sixteenth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Procter and Maclear.—AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER. Rearranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. PROCTER and the Rev. Dr. MACLEAR. New and Enlarged Edition, containing the Communion Service and the Confirmation and Baptismal Offices. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

The Psalms, with Introductions and Critical Notes.—By A. C. JENNINGS, B.A., Jesus College, Cambridge, Tyrwhitt Scholar, Crosse Scholar, Hebrew University, Prizeman, and Fry Scholar of St. John's College; assisted in Parts by W. H. LOWE, M.A., Hebrew Lecturer and late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge, and Tyrwhitt Scholar. In 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Ramsay.—THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL; or, the Church Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the Use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Simpson.—AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. By WILLIAM SIMPSON, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

St. John's Epistles.—The Greek Text with Notes and Essays, by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Regius Professor of Divinity and Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, Canon of Westminster, &c. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

St. Paul's Epistles.—Greek Text, with Introduction and Notes.

THE EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. Edited by the Right Rev. J. B. LIGHTFOOT, D.D., Bishop of Durham. Seventh Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS. By the same Editor. Seventh Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE COLOSSIANS. By the same Editor. Sixth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Edited by the Very Rev. C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D., Dean of Llandaff, and Master of the Temple. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE THESSALONIANS, COMMENTARY ON THE GREEK TEXT. By JOHN EADIE, D.D., LL.D. Edited by the Rev. W. YOUNG, M.A., with Preface by Professor CAIRNS. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLES TO THE EPHESIANS, THE COLOSSIANS, AND PHILEMON; with Introductions and Notes, and an Essay on the Traces of Foreign Elements in the Theology of these Epistles. By the Rev. J. LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A., Rector of Christ Church, St. Marylebone; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, revised. Demy 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

The Epistle to the Hebrews. In Greek and English. With Critical and Explanatory Notes. Edited by Rev. FREDERIC RENDALL, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow School. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Trench.—Works by R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

NOTES ON THE PARABLES OF OUR LORD. Fourteenth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

NOTES ON THE MIRACLES OF OUR LORD. Twelfth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLES TO THE SEVEN CHURCHES IN ASIA. Third Edition, revised. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

LECTURES ON MEDIEVAL CHURCH HISTORY. Being the substance of Lectures delivered at Queen's College, London. Second Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

SYNONYMS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. Ninth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

Westcott.—Works by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Canon of Westminster, Regius Professor of Divinity, and Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

A GENERAL SURVEY OF THE HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT DURING THE FIRST FOUR CENTURIES. Fifth Edition. With Preface on "Supernatural Religion." Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE FOUR GOSPELS. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE BIBLE IN THE CHURCH. A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLES OF ST. JOHN. The Greek Text, with Notes and Essays. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. The Greek Text Revised, with Notes and Essays. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Westcott and Hort.—THE NEW TESTAMENT IN THE ORIGINAL GREEK. The Text Revised by B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D., Regius Professor of Divinity, Canon of Westminster, and F. J. A. HORT, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity; Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge: late Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I. Text.

Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

Wilson.—THE BIBLE STUDENT'S GUIDE to the more Correct Understanding of the English Translation of the Old Testament, by reference to the original Hebrew. By WILLIAM WILSON, D.D., Canon of Winchester, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition, carefully revised. 4to. cloth. 25*s.*

Wright.—THE BIBLE WORD-BOOK: A Glossary of Archaic Words and Phrases in the Authorised Version of the Bible and the Book of Common Prayer. By W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A., Fellow and Burser of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Yonge (Charlotte M.).—SCRIPTURE READINGS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." In Five Vols.

FIRST SERIES. GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

SECOND SERIES. From JOSHUA to SOLOMON. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

THIRD SERIES. The KINGS and the PROPHETS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

FOURTH SERIES. The GOSPEL TIMES. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments. extra fcap. 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

FIFTH SERIES. APOSTOLIC TIMES. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Zechariah—Lowe.—THE HEBREW STUDENT'S COMMENTARY ON ZECHARIAH, HEBREW AND LXX. With Excursus on Syllable-dividing, Metheg, Initial Dagesh, and Siman Raphèh. By W. H. LOWE, M.A., Hebrew Lecturer at Christ's College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

London: R. Clay, Sons, and Taylor, Printers.

MACMILLAN'S GLOBE LIBRARY.

In Cloth Binding, Globe 8vo, 3s. 6d. each.

"The 'Globe' Editions are admirable for their scholarly editing, their typographical excellence, their compendious form, and their cheapness."—*Saturday Review.*

"Not only truly cheap, but excellent in every way."—*Literary World.*

"A wonderfully cheap and scholarly series."—*Daily Telegraph.*

SHAKESPEARE'S COMPLETE WORKS. Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A. With Glossary.

MORTE D'ARTHUR. The Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table. The Original Edition of Caxton revised for Modern Use, with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By Sir E. STRACHEY.

ROBINSON CRUSOE. Edited after the Original Editions. With a Biographical Introduction by HENRY KINGSLEY, F.R.G.S.

SIR WALTER SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited with Biographical and Critical Memoir, by F. T. PALGRAVE. With Introduction and Notes.

VIRGIL. Rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Notes, Analysis, and Index, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

HORACE. Rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, Notes, and Index, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

DRYDEN'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with a Memoir, Revised Text, and Notes, by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A.

COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Biographical Introduction and Notes, by W. BENHAM, B.D.

BURNS'S COMPLETE WORKS. Edited from the best Printed and MS. Authorities, with Memoir and Glossarial Index, by ALEXANDER SMITH.

GOLDSMITH'S MISCELLANEOUS WORKS. With Biographical Introduction by Professor MASSON.

POPE'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Notes and Introductory Memoir, by Professor WARD, of Owens College, Manchester.

SPENSER'S COMPLETE WORKS. Edited from the Original Editions and Manuscripts, with Glossary, by R. MORRIS, and a Memoir by J. W. HALES, M.A.

MILTON'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Introductions, by Professor MASSON.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

Now Publishing, in Crown 8vo, price 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

Also in stiff boards, uncut edges, price 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

ENGLISH MEN OF LETTERS.

EDITED BY JOHN MORLEY.

"These excellent biographies should be made class-books for Schools."—*Westminster Review.*

"This admirable series."—*British Quarterly Review.*

"Enjoyable and excellent little books."—*Academy.*

JOHNSON. By LESLIE STEPHEN.
SCOTT. By R. H. HUTTON.
GIBBON. By J. C. MORISON.
SHELLEY. By J. A. SYMONDS.
HUME. By Professor HUXLEY, P.R.S.
GOLDSMITH. By WILLIAM BLACK.
DEFOE. By W. MINTO.
BURNS. By Principal SHAIRP.
SPENSER. By the Very Rev. the DEAN OF ST. PAUL'S.
THACKERAY. By ANTHONY TROLLOPE.
BURKE. By JOHN MORLEY.
BUNYAN. By J. A. FROUDE.
POPE. By LESLIE STEPHEN.
BYRON. By Professor NICHOL.
COWPER. By GOLDWIN SMITH.
LOCKE. By Professor FOWLER.
WORDSWORTH. By F. W. H. MYERS.
DRYDEN. By G. SAINTSBURY.
LANDOR. By Professor SIDNEY COLVIN.
CHARLES LAMB. By Rev. A. AINGER.
BENTLEY. By Professor R. C. JEBB.
DICKENS. By Prof. A. W. WARD.
MACAULAY. By J. C. MORISON.
DE QUINCEY. By Prof. MASSON
MILTON. By MARK PATTISON.
HAWTHORNE. By HENRY JAMES.
SOUTHEY. By Professor DOWDEN.
CHAUCER. By Prof. A. W. WARD.
GRAY. By EDMUND GOSSE.
SWIFT. By LESLIE STEPHEN.
STERNE. By H. D. TRAILL.
FIELDING. By AUSTIN DOBSON.
SHERIDAN. By Mrs. OLIPHANT.
ADDISON. By W. J. COURTHOPE.
BACON. By the Very Rev. the DEAN OF ST. PAUL'S.

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

Macmillan & Co.'s New Illustrated Catalogue of Books suitable for PRESENTATION and SCHOOL PRIZES, at prices ranging from SIXPENCE upwards, may now be had, post free.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.